

# SYSTIMAX®

---

## SOLUTIONS

# SYSTIMAX® AirSPEED™ AP542

User Guide



SYSTIMAX® Structured Connectivity Solutions

[www.systimax.com](http://www.systimax.com)

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
	Document Conventions	11
	Introduction to Wireless Networking	11
	Guidelines for Roaming	12
	IEEE 802.11 Specifications	13
	Management and Monitoring Capabilities	13
	HTTP/HTTPS Interface	13
	Command Line Interface	13
	SNMP Management	14
	SNMPv3 Secure Management	14
	SSH (Secure Shell) Management	14
<b>2</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>15</b>
	SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542 Hardware Description	15
	Dual Band Signal Enhancing Antenna Description	15
	Antenna Diversity Options	16
	Power over Ethernet (PoE)	16
	LED Indicators	16
	Installation in the Plenum (North America Only)	17
	Prerequisites (for AP Configuration Only)	17
	Product Package	19
	System Requirements	19
	Regulatory Compliance and Safety Instructions	19
	Initialization	20
	ScanTool	20
	ScanTool Instructions	20
	Setup Wizard	22
	Setup Wizard Instructions	22
	Latest Software Availability	25
	Setup your TFTP Server	25
	Download Updates from your TFTP Server using the Web Interface	25
	Download Updates from your TFTP Server using the CLI Interface	25
	Logging into the HTTP Interface	26
<b>3</b>	<b>Viewing Status Information</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Performing Advanced Configuration</b>	<b>29</b>

System .....	31
Dynamic DNS Support .....	31
Access Point System Naming Convention .....	31
Network .....	33
IP Configuration .....	33
DHCP Server .....	35
DHCP Relay Agent .....	36
DHCP Server IP Address Table .....	36
Link Integrity .....	37
Interfaces .....	39
Operational Mode .....	40
Super Mode and Turbo Mode .....	40
IEEE 802.11d Support for Additional Regulatory Domains .....	40
TX Power Control .....	41
Wireless-A (802.11a radio) and Wireless-B (802.11b/g radio) .....	43
Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) .....	44
RTS/CTS Medium Reservation .....	45
Wireless Service Status .....	45
Multicast Rate .....	46
Wireless Distribution System (WDS) .....	48
Ethernet .....	50
Management .....	51
Passwords .....	51
IP Access Table .....	51
Services .....	52
Secure Management .....	52
SNMP Settings .....	52
HTTP Access .....	52
HTTPS Access (Secure Socket Layer) .....	52
Telnet Configuration Settings .....	54
Secure Shell (SSH) Settings .....	54
SSH Session Setup .....	54
SSH Clients .....	54
Configuring SSH .....	54
Serial Configuration Settings .....	56
RADIUS Based Management Access .....	56
Automatic Configuration (AutoConfig) .....	57
Auto Configuration and the CLI Batch File .....	57
Hardware Configuration Reset (CHRD) .....	60
Configuration Reset via Serial Port During Bootup .....	60
Configuring Hardware Configuration Reset .....	61

Procedure to Reset Configuration via the Serial Interface . . . . .	61
Filtering . . . . .	62
Ethernet Protocol . . . . .	62
Static MAC . . . . .	63
Static MAC Filter Examples . . . . .	64
Advanced . . . . .	66
TCP/UDP Port . . . . .	67
Adding TCP/UDP Port Filters . . . . .	67
Editing TCP/UDP Port Filters . . . . .	67
Alarms . . . . .	68
Groups . . . . .	68
Severity Levels . . . . .	68
Alarm Host Table . . . . .	70
Syslog . . . . .	71
Setting Syslog Event Notifications . . . . .	71
Configuring Syslog Event Notifications . . . . .	71
Syslog Messages . . . . .	72
Rogue Scan . . . . .	73
Multi-Band Scanning . . . . .	73
Continuous Scanning Mode . . . . .	73
Background Scanning Mode . . . . .	74
Rogue Scan Data Collection . . . . .	74
Rogue Scan . . . . .	75
Bridge . . . . .	77
Spanning Tree . . . . .	77
Storm Threshold . . . . .	77
Intra BSS . . . . .	77
Packet Forwarding . . . . .	78
Configuring Interfaces for Packet Forwarding . . . . .	78
QoS . . . . .	79
Wireless Multimedia Extensions (WMM)/Quality of Service (QoS) . . . . .	79
QoS Policies . . . . .	79
Priority Mapping . . . . .	81
Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) . . . . .	83
STA EDCA Table and AP EDCA Table . . . . .	83
RADIUS Profiles . . . . .	85
RADIUS Servers per Authentication Mode and per VLAN . . . . .	85
RADIUS Servers Enforcing VLAN Access Control . . . . .	86
Configuring RADIUS Profiles . . . . .	86
Adding or Modifying a RADIUS Server Profile . . . . .	86
MAC Access Control Via RADIUS Authentication . . . . .	88

802.1x Authentication using RADIUS .....	88
RADIUS Accounting .....	88
Session Length .....	88
Authentication and Accounting Attributes .....	88
SSID/VLAN/Security .....	90
Management VLAN .....	90
VLAN Overview .....	90
VLAN Workgroups and Traffic Management .....	91
Enabling or Disabling VLAN Protocol .....	92
Security Profile .....	93
WEP Encryption .....	93
802.1x Authentication .....	93
Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2) .....	94
Authentication Protocol Hierarchy .....	95
VLANs and Security Profiles .....	95
Configuring Security Profiles .....	96
MAC Access .....	99
Wireless-A or Wireless-B .....	100
Adding or Modifying an SSID/VLAN with VLAN Protocol Disabled .....	100
Adding or Modifying an SSID/VLAN with VLAN Protocol Enabled .....	103
Broadcast SSID and Closed System .....	106
<b>5 Monitoring the AirSPEED AP542 .....</b>	<b>107</b>
Version .....	108
ICMP .....	109
IP ARP Table .....	109
Learn Table .....	110
IAPP .....	110
RADIUS .....	111
Interfaces .....	112
Station Statistics .....	113
Enabling and Viewing Station Statistics .....	113
Refreshing Station Statistics .....	113
Description of Station Statistics .....	113
<b>6 Performing Commands .....</b>	<b>115</b>
Introduction to File Transfer via TFTP or HTTP .....	116
TFTP File Transfer Guidelines .....	116
HTTP File Transfer Guidelines .....	116
Image Error Checking during File Transfer .....	116

Update AP .....	117
Update AP via TFTP .....	117
Update AP via HTTP .....	118
Retrieve File .....	120
Retrieve File via TFTP .....	120
Retrieve File via HTTP .....	121
Reboot .....	122
Reset .....	123
Help Link .....	124
<b>7 Troubleshooting the AirSPEED AP542 .....</b>	<b>125</b>
Troubleshooting Concepts .....	125
Symptoms and Solutions .....	126
Connectivity Issues .....	126
AP Unit Will Not Boot - No LED Activity .....	126
Serial Link Does Not Work .....	126
Ethernet Link Does Not Work .....	126
Basic Software Setup and Configuration Problems .....	126
Lost AP, Telnet, or SNMP Password .....	126
Client Computer Cannot Connect .....	126
AP Has Incorrect IP Address .....	126
HTTP (browser) or Telnet Interface Does Not Work .....	127
HTML Help Files Do Not Appear .....	127
Telnet CLI Does Not Work .....	127
TFTP Server Does Not Work .....	127
Client Connection Problems .....	128
Client Software Finds No Connection .....	128
Client PC Card Does Not Work .....	128
Intermittent Loss of Connection .....	128
Client Does Not Receive an IP Address - Cannot Connect to Internet .....	128
VLAN Operation Issues .....	128
Verifying Proper Operation of the VLAN Feature .....	128
VLAN Workgroups .....	128
Power over Ethernet (PoE) .....	129
The AP Does Not Work .....	129
There Is No Data Link .....	129
“Overload” Indications .....	129
Recovery Procedures .....	129
Reset to Factory Default Procedure .....	130
Forced Reload Procedure .....	130
Download a New Image Using ScanTool .....	131

Download a New Image Using the Bootloader CLI . . . . .	132
Setting IP Address using Serial Port . . . . .	133
Hardware and Software Requirements. . . . .	133
Attaching the Serial Port Cable. . . . .	133
Initializing the IP Address using CLI. . . . .	133
Related Applications . . . . .	135
RADIUS Authentication Server . . . . .	135
TFTP Server . . . . .	135
<b>A Using the Command Line Interface (CLI). . . . .</b>	<b>136</b>
General Notes . . . . .	136
Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge . . . . .	136
Notation Conventions . . . . .	136
Important Terminology . . . . .	136
Navigation and Special Keys . . . . .	137
CLI Error Messages. . . . .	137
Command Line Interface (CLI) Variations . . . . .	137
Bootloader CLI. . . . .	138
CLI Command Types . . . . .	139
Operational CLI Commands . . . . .	139
? (List Commands) . . . . .	139
done, exit, quit . . . . .	141
download . . . . .	141
help. . . . .	141
history. . . . .	142
passwd . . . . .	142
reboot . . . . .	142
search. . . . .	142
upload. . . . .	143
Parameter Control Commands . . . . .	143
"show" CLI Command. . . . .	143
"set" CLI Command . . . . .	144
Configuring Objects that Require Reboot. . . . .	144
"set" and "show" Command Examples . . . . .	144
Using Tables & User Strings . . . . .	146
Working with Tables. . . . .	146
Using Strings . . . . .	147
Configuring the AP using CLI commands . . . . .	147
Log into the AP using HyperTerminal . . . . .	147
Log into the AP using Telnet . . . . .	148
Set Basic Configuration Parameters using CLI Commands . . . . .	148

Set System Name, Location and Contact Information . . . . .	148
Set Static IP Address for the AP . . . . .	149
Change Passwords . . . . .	149
Set Network Names for the Wireless Interface . . . . .	149
Enable 802.11d Support and Set the Country Code . . . . .	151
Enable and Configure TX Power Control for the Wireless Interface(s) . . . . .	152
Configure SSID (Network Name) and VLAN Pairs, and Profiles . . . . .	152
Download an AP Configuration File from your TFTP Server . . . . .	152
Backup your AP Configuration File . . . . .	152
Set up Auto Configuration . . . . .	153
<b>Other Network Settings . . . . .</b>	<b>153</b>
Configure the AP as a DHCP Server . . . . .	153
Configure the DNS Client . . . . .	154
Configure DHCP Relay . . . . .	154
Configure DHCP Relay Servers . . . . .	154
Maintain Client Connections using Link Integrity . . . . .	154
Change your Wireless Interface Settings . . . . .	154
Set Ethernet Speed and Transmission Mode . . . . .	156
Set Interface Management Services . . . . .	156
Configure Syslog . . . . .	157
Configure Intra BSS . . . . .	158
Configure MAC Access Control . . . . .	158
Set RADIUS Parameters . . . . .	158
Set Rogue Scan Parameters . . . . .	159
Set Hardware Configuration Reset Parameters . . . . .	159
Set VLAN/SSID Parameters . . . . .	160
<b>CLI Monitoring Parameters . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>Parameter Tables . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
System Parameters . . . . .	163
Inventory Management Information . . . . .	163
Network Parameters . . . . .	164
IP Configuration Parameters . . . . .	164
DHCP Server Parameters . . . . .	165
DHCP Relay Group . . . . .	165
DHCP Relay Server Table . . . . .	166
Link Integrity Parameters . . . . .	166
Link Integrity IP Target Table . . . . .	166
Interface Parameters . . . . .	167
Wireless Interface Parameters . . . . .	167
Wireless Interface SSID/VLAN/Profile Parameters . . . . .	171
Wireless Distribution System (WDS) Security Table Parameters . . . . .	171



Ethernet Interface Parameters . . . . .	172
Management Parameters . . . . .	172
Secure Management Parameters . . . . .	172
SNMP Parameters . . . . .	172
HTTP (web browser) Parameters . . . . .	173
Telnet Parameters . . . . .	173
Serial Port Parameters . . . . .	173
RADIUS Based Management Access Parameters . . . . .	174
SSH Parameters . . . . .	174
Auto Configuration Parameters . . . . .	174
TFTP Server Parameters . . . . .	175
IP Access Table Parameters . . . . .	175
Filtering Parameters . . . . .	175
Ethernet Protocol Filtering Parameters . . . . .	175
Static MAC Address Filter Table . . . . .	176
Proxy ARP Parameters . . . . .	176
IP ARP Filtering Parameters . . . . .	176
Broadcast Filtering Table . . . . .	177
TCP/UDP Port Filtering . . . . .	177
Alarms Parameters . . . . .	178
SNMP Table Host Table Parameters . . . . .	178
Syslog Parameters . . . . .	178
Bridge Parameters . . . . .	179
Spanning Tree Parameters . . . . .	179
Storm Threshold Parameters . . . . .	179
Intra BSS Subscriber Blocking . . . . .	180
Packet Forwarding Parameters . . . . .	180
RADIUS Parameters . . . . .	180
Security Parameters . . . . .	181
MAC Access Control Parameters . . . . .	181
Rogue Scan Configuration Table . . . . .	181
Hardware Configuration Reset . . . . .	182
VLAN/SSID Parameters . . . . .	182
Security Profile Table . . . . .	182
Command Syntax and Examples of Configuring Security Profiles: . . . . .	183
Other Parameters . . . . .	184
IAPP Parameters . . . . .	184
Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM)/Quality of Service (QoS) parameters . . . . .	184
Enabling QoS . . . . .	184
Configuring QoS Policies . . . . .	185
Specifying the Mapping between 802.1p and 802.1D Priorities . . . . .	185
Specifying the Mapping between IP Precedence/DSCP Ranges and 802.1D Priorities . . . . .	185

QoS Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) Parameters . . . . .	186
Defining the QoS Policy used for a Wireless Interface SSID . . . . .	186
CLI Batch File . . . . .	187
Auto Configuration and the CLI Batch File . . . . .	187
CLI Batch File Format and Syntax . . . . .	187
Sample CLI Batch File . . . . .	187
Reboot Behavior . . . . .	188
CLI Batch File Error Log . . . . .	188
<b>B ASCII Character Chart . . . . .</b>	<b>189</b>
<b>C Specifications . . . . .</b>	<b>190</b>
Software Features . . . . .	190
Number of Stations per BSS . . . . .	190
Management Functions . . . . .	190
Advanced Bridging Functions . . . . .	191
Medium Access Control (MAC) Functions . . . . .	191
Security Functions . . . . .	191
Network Functions . . . . .	192
Hardware Specifications for the SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542 . . . . .	192
Physical Specifications . . . . .	192
Electrical Specifications . . . . .	192
Environmental Specifications . . . . .	192
Ethernet Interface . . . . .	192
Serial Port Interface . . . . .	192
Power over Ethernet Interface . . . . .	192
HTTP Interface . . . . .	192
Radio Specifications . . . . .	193
802.11a Channel Frequencies . . . . .	194
802.11b/g Channel Frequencies . . . . .	195
Wireless Communication Range . . . . .	195
802.11b . . . . .	196
802.11a . . . . .	196
802.11g . . . . .	196

# 1

## Introduction

- [Document Conventions](#)
- [Introduction to Wireless Networking](#)
- [IEEE 802.11 Specifications](#)
- [Management and Monitoring Capabilities](#)

## Document Conventions

- The term **AP** refers to an Access Point.
- The term **802.11** is used to describe features that apply to the 802.11a, 802.11b, and 802.11g wireless standards.
- Blue underlined text indicates a link to a topic or Web address. If you are viewing this documentation on your computer, click the blue text to jump to the linked item.



### NOTE

A Note indicates important information that helps you make better use of your computer.



### CAUTION

A Caution indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells you how to avoid the problem.

## Introduction to Wireless Networking

An Access Point (AP) is a device used to extend the existing Ethernet network (structured cabling) to mobile clients (i.e., laptops, PDAs), enabling mobility, productivity, collaboration and flexibility. Mobile clients can connect to a single Access Point, or move between multiple Access Points located within the same vicinity, maintaining network connectivity.

To determine the best location for an Access Point, SYSTIMAX recommends following the SYSTIMAX Design and Installation Guidelines. For information, contact your local reseller or visit our website at [www.systimax.com](http://www.systimax.com).

Network initialization and configuration should be performed by the network administrator based on network requirements.

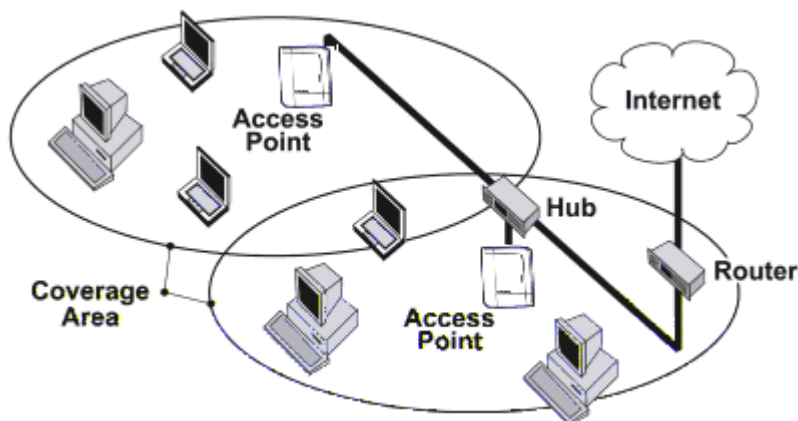


Figure 1-1 Typical Wireless Network Access Infrastructure

A wireless network provides:

- Seamless client roaming
- Easy installation and operation
- Over-the-air encryption of data
- High speed network links

### Guidelines for Roaming

- An Access Point can only communicate with client devices that support its wireless standard.
- All Access Points must have the same Network Name to support client roaming.
- All workstations with an 802.11 client adapter installed must use either a Network Name of "any" or the same Network Name as the Access Points that they will roam between. If an AP has Closed System enabled, a client must have the same Network Name as the Access Point to communicate (see [Interfaces](#) for details).
- All Access Points and clients must have matching security settings to communicate.
- The Access Points' cells should overlap to ensure that there are no gaps in coverage and to ensure that the roaming client will always have a connection available.
- All Access Points in the same vicinity should use a unique, independent channel. By default, the AP automatically scans for available channels during boot-up; however, you can also set the channel manually (see [Interfaces](#) for details).
- Access Points that use the same channel should be installed as far away from each other as possible to reduce potential interference.

## IEEE 802.11 Specifications

In 1997, the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) adopted the 802.11 standard for wireless devices operating in the 2.4 GHz frequency band. This standard includes provisions for three radio technologies: direct sequence spread spectrum, frequency hopping spread spectrum, and infrared. Devices that comply with the 802.11 standard operate at a data rate of either 1 or 2 Megabits per second (Mbps).

In 1999, the IEEE modified the 802.11 standard to support direct sequence devices that can operate at speeds of up to 11 Mbps/s. The IEEE ratified this standard as **802.11b**. 802.11b devices are backwards compatible with 2.4 GHz 802.11 direct sequence devices (that operate at 1 or 2 Mbps/s). Available Frequency Channels vary by regulatory domain and/or country. See [802.11b/g Channel Frequencies](#) for details.

Also in 1999, the IEEE modified the 802.11 standard to support devices operating in the 5 GHz frequency band. This standard is referred to as **802.11a**. 802.11a devices are not compatible with 2.4 GHz 802.11 or 802.11b devices. 802.11a radios use a radio technology called Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM) to achieve data rates of up to 54 Mbps/s. Available Frequency Channels vary by regulatory domain and/or country. See [802.11a Channel Frequencies](#) for details.

In 2003, the IEEE introduced the **802.11g** standard. 802.11g devices operate in the 2.4 GHz frequency band using OFDM to achieve data rates of up to 54 Mbps/s. In addition, 802.11g devices are backwards compatible with 802.11b devices. Available Frequency Channels vary by regulatory domain and/or country. See [802.11b/g Channel Frequencies](#) for details.

## Management and Monitoring Capabilities

There are several management and monitoring interfaces available to allow the network administrator to configure and manage an AP on the network:

- [HTTP/HTTPS Interface](#)
- [Command Line Interface](#)
- [SNMP Management](#)
- [SSH \(Secure Shell\) Management](#)

### HTTP/HTTPS Interface

The HTTP interface (Web browser interface) provides easy access to configuration settings and network statistics from any computer on the network. You can access the HTTP interface over your LAN (switch, hub, etc.), over the Internet, or with a “crossover” Ethernet cable connected directly to your computer’s Ethernet port.

HTTPS provides an HTTP connection over a Secure Socket Layer. HTTPS is one of three available secure management options on the AP; the other secure management options are SNMPv3 and SSH. Enabling HTTPS allows the user to access the AP in a secure fashion using Secure Socket Layer (SSL) over port 443. The AP supports SSLv3 with a 128-bit encryption certificate maintained by the AP for secure communications between the AP and the HTTP client. All communications are encrypted using the server and the client-side certificate.

The AP comes pre-installed with all required SSL files: default certificate, private key and SSL Certificate Passphrase installed.

### Command Line Interface

The Command Line Interface (CLI) is a text-based configuration utility that supports a set of keyboard commands and parameters to configure and manage an AP.

Users enter Command Statements, composed of CLI commands and their associated parameters. Statements may be issued from the keyboard for real-time control, or from scripts that automate configuration. For example, when downloading a file, administrators enter the **download** CLI command along with the IP Address, file name, and file type parameters.

You access the CLI over a HyperTerminal serial connection or via Telnet. During initial configuration, you can use the CLI over a serial port connection to configure an Access Point’s IP address. When accessing the CLI via Telnet, you can communicate with the Access Point over your LAN (switch, hub, etc.), over the Internet, or with a “crossover” Ethernet cable connected directly to your computer’s Ethernet Port. See [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for more information on the CLI and for a list of CLI commands and parameters.

## SNMP Management

In addition to the HTTP and the CLI interfaces, you can also manage and configure an AP using the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). Note that this requires an SNMP manager program, like HP Openview or Castlerock's SNMPc. The AP supports several Management Information Base (MIB) files that describe the parameters that can be viewed and/or configured over SNMP:

- MIB-II (RFC 1213)
- Bridge MIB (RFC 1493)
- Ethernet-like MIB (RFC 1643)
- 802.11 MIB
- AirSPEED Enterprise MIB

SYSTIMAX provides these MIB files on the CD-ROM included with each Access Point. You need to compile one or more of the above MIBs into your SNMP program's database before you can manage an Access Point using SNMP. Refer to the documentation that came with your SNMP manager for instructions on how to compile MIBs.

The Enterprise MIB defines the read and read-write objects that can be viewed or configured using SNMP. These objects correspond to most of the settings and statistics that are available with the other management interfaces. Refer to the Enterprise MIB for more information; the MIB can be opened with any text editor, such as Microsoft Word, Notepad, or WordPad.

## SNMPv3 Secure Management

SNMPv3 is based on the existing SNMP framework, but addresses security requirements for device and network management.

The security threats addressed by Secure Management are:

- *Modification of information:* An entity could alter an in-transit message generated by an authorized entity in such a way as to effect unauthorized management operations, including the setting of object values. The essence of this threat is that an unauthorized entity could change any management parameter, including those related to configuration, operations, and accounting.
- *Masquerade:* Management operations that are not authorized for some entity may be attempted by that entity by assuming the identity of an authorized entity.
- *Message stream modification:* SNMP is designed to operate over a connectionless transport protocol. There is a threat that SNMP messages could be reordered, delayed, or replayed (duplicated) to effect unauthorized management operations. For example, a message to reboot a device could be copied and replayed later.
- *Disclosure:* An entity could observe exchanges between a manager and an agent and thereby could learn of notifiable events and the values of managed objects. For example, the observation of a set command that changes passwords would enable an attacker to learn the new passwords.

To address the security threats listed above, SNMPv3 provides the following when secure management is enabled:

- **Authentication:** Provides data integrity and data origin authentication.
- **Privacy (a.k.a Encryption):** Protects against disclosure of message payload.
- **Access Control:** Controls and authorizes access to managed objects.

The default SNMPv3 username is **administrator**, with SHA authentication, and DES privacy protocol.

## SSH (Secure Shell) Management

You may also securely manage the AP using SSH (Secure Shell). The AP supports SSH version 2, for secure remote CLI (Telnet) sessions. SSH provides strong authentication and encryption of session data.

The SSH server (AP) has **host keys** - a pair of asymmetric keys - a **private key** that resides on the AP and a **public key** that is distributed to clients that need to connect to the AP. As the client has knowledge of the server host keys, the client can verify that it is communicating with the correct SSH server.

### NOTE

The remainder of this guide describes how to configure an AP using the HTTP Web interface or the CLI interface. For information on how to manage devices using SNMP or SSH, refer to the documentation that came with your SNMP or SSH program. Also, refer to the MIB files for information on the parameters available via SNMP and SSH.

# 2

## Getting Started

- [SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542 Hardware Description](#)
  - [Dual Band Signal Enhancing Antenna Description](#)
  - [Power over Ethernet \(PoE\)](#)
  - [LED Indicators](#)
  - [Installation in the Plenum \(North America Only\)](#)
- [Prerequisites \(for AP Configuration Only\)](#)
- [Product Package](#)
- [System Requirements](#)
- [Initialization](#)
- [Latest Software Availability](#)
- [Logging into the HTTP Interface](#)

### SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542 Hardware Description

The SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542 is a tri-mode AP that can support 802.11b, 802.11g, or 802.11a clients. The AirSPEED AP542 contains two embedded radios: one 802.11b/g radio and one 802.11a only radio.

SYSTIMAX recommends powering the AirSPEED AP542 with Power over Ethernet (802.3af); alternatively, an external DC power source using the power cord may be used to power the device.

The AirSPEED AP542 includes a power jack, a 10/100 base-T Ethernet port, and an RS-232 serial data communication port. The AirSPEED AP542 cable cover allows access to the power cord and cables and to the reset and reload buttons. The area below the cable cover also serves as a cable routing area.

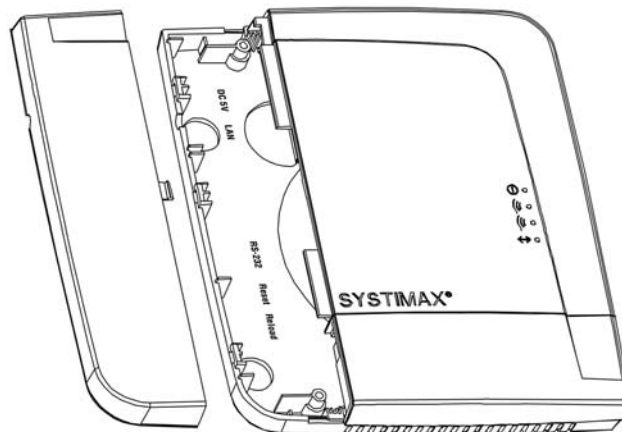


Figure 2-1 AirSPEED AP542 Cable Cover

### Dual Band Signal Enhancing Antenna Description

The AirSPEED AP542 can use internal or external antennas. The AirSPEED AP542 has two diversity antennas embedded for each radio system. For each radio, the internal antennas are arranged to provide both spatial and polarization diversity.

The Dual Band SEA is a dual band indoor antenna that works with both 2.4 GHz (802.11b/g) and 5 GHz (802.11a) radios. The Dual Band SEA can be used with either radio on the AirSPEED AP542. The Dual Band SEA allows for better antenna placement to enhance the signal for installations in the ceiling or in RF unfriendly environments.

### Antenna Diversity Options

With one Dual Band SEA connected to one of the two external antenna connectors on a radio, the AP supports antenna diversity (one embedded antenna and one external SEA) and one of the two embedded antennas is disabled.

With two Dual Band SEAs connected to the two external antenna connectors, the AP supports antenna diversity (two external SEAs), and both embedded antennas are disabled.

### Power over Ethernet (PoE)

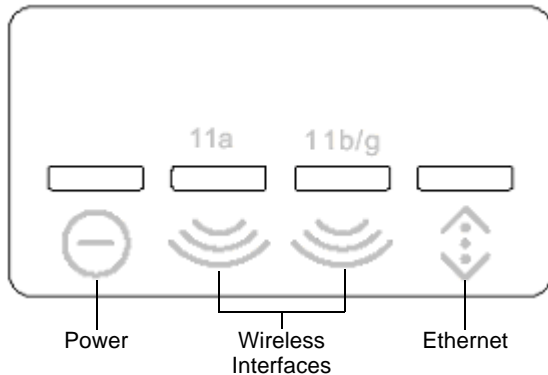
The AirSPEED AP542 is equipped with an 802.3af-compliant Power over Ethernet (PoE) module. Power over Ethernet delivers both data and power to the Access Point over a single Ethernet cable. SYSTIMAX recommends using a midspan Power over Ethernet device to power the AP as an alternative to the power adaptor. The use of such device will not affect the operation of the AP.

- The Power over Ethernet (PoE) integrated module receives ~48 VDC over a standard Category 5e/6 Ethernet cable.
- To use PoE, you must have a midspan PoE device (also known as a power injector) connected to the network.
- The cable length between the midspan PoE device and the Access Point should not exceed 100 meters (~325 feet). The midspan PoE device is not a repeater and does not amplify the Ethernet data signal.
- If connected to a midspan PoE device and AC power simultaneously, the Access Point draws power from Power over Ethernet.

Refer to [Power over Ethernet Interface](#) in the [Hardware Specifications for the SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542](#) section for more information.

### LED Indicators

The top panel of the AirSPEED AP542 has the following LED indicators.



**Figure 2-2** LED Indicators on the AirSPEED AP542 Top Panel



The LED indicators exhibit the following behavior:

Indication	Power	Wireless Interface A (802.11a radio)	Wireless Interface B (802.11b/g radio)	Ethernet
Solid Green	AP image running.	Wireless interface A is preparing for use.	Wireless interface B is preparing for use.	Ethernet interface is connected at 100 Mbps with no traffic
Blinking Green	n/a	Wireless interface A is transmitting or receiving wireless packets.	Wireless interface B is transmitting or receiving wireless packets.	Ethernet interface is connected at 100 Mbps with traffic
Solid Yellow	n/a	n/a	n/a	Ethernet interface is connected at 10 Mbps with no traffic
Blinking Yellow	n/a	n/a	n/a	The Ethernet interface is connected at 10 Mbps with traffic
Solid Amber	The Bootloader is loading the application software.	n/a	n/a	n/a
Blinking Amber	The AP is reloading.	n/a	n/a	n/a
Solid Red	Power On Self Test (POST) running.	n/a	n/a	n/a
Blinking Red	Rebooting.	n/a	n/a	n/a

## Installation in the Plenum (North America Only)

In an office building, the plenum is the 18 inches of space located above office ceiling tiles used to house the structured cabling infrastructure. All products located in the plenum must comply with specific safety instructions, such as Underwriter Labs (UL) Standard 2043: "Standard for Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-Handling Spaces".

The AirSPEED AP542 has been certified under UL Standard 2043 and can be installed in the plenum.

SYSTIMAX recommends that an AirSPEED AP542 that is installed in the plenum be powered by Power over Ethernet and use a minimum of one Signal Enhancing Antenna (SEA) per radio.

## Prerequisites (for AP Configuration Only)

Before installing an AirSPEED AP542, you need to gather certain network information. The following section identifies the information you need.

Network Information	Description
Network Name (SSID of the embedded radios)	You must assign the Access Point a Network Name before wireless users can communicate with it. The clients also need the same Network Name. This is not the same as the System Name, which applies only to the Access Point. The network administrator typically provides the Network Name.
AP's IP Address	If you do not have a DHCP server on your network, then you need to assign the Access Point an IP address that is valid on your network.
HTTP Password	Each Access Point requires a read/write password to access the web interface. The default password is "public".
CLI Password	Each Access Point requires a read/write password to access the CLI interface. The default password is "public".
SNMP Read Password	Each Access Point requires a password to allow get requests from an SNMP manager. The default password is "public".
SNMP Read-Write Password	Each Access Point requires a password to allow get and set requests from an SNMP manager. The default password is "public".
SNMPv3 Authentication Password	If Secure Management is enabled, each Access Point requires a password for sending authenticated SNMPv3 messages. The default password is "public".
SNMPv3 Privacy Password	If Secure Management is enabled, each Access Point requires a password when sending encrypted SNMPv3 data. The default password is "public".

Network Information	Description
Security Settings	You need to determine what security features you will enable on the Access Point.
Authentication Method	A primary authentication server may be configured; a backup authentication server is optional. The network administrator typically provides this information.
Authentication Server Shared Secret	This is a password shared between the Access Point and the RADIUS authentication server (so both passwords must be the same), and is typically provided by the network administrator.
Authentication Server Authentication Port	This is a port number (default is 1812) and is typically provided by the network administrator.
Client IP Address Pool Allocation Scheme	The Access Point can automatically provide IP addresses to clients as they sign on. The network administrator typically provides the IP Pool range.
DNS Server IP Address	The network administrator typically provides this IP Address.
Gateway IP Address and Subnet Mask	The gateway IP address and subnet mask of the network environment where the Access Point is deployed.

## Product Package

- AirSPEED AP542 unit (with integrated 802.11a radio, integrated 802.11b/g radio, and Power over Ethernet)
- Power adapter
- One mounting plate and hardware
- One installation CD-ROM that contains the following:
  - Software Installation Wizard
  - ScanTool
  - Solarwinds TFTP software
  - MIBs
  - HTML Help
  - User Guide in PDF format
- Regulatory Compliance flyer
- One *Installation Guide*

If any of these items are missing or damaged, please contact your reseller.

## System Requirements

To begin using an AP, you must have the following minimum requirements:

- A 10Base-T Ethernet or 100Base-TX Fast Ethernet switch or hub or cross-over Ethernet cord
- At least one of the following IEEE 802.11-compliant devices:
  - An 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11b/g client device
- A computer that is connected to the same IP network as the AP and has one of the following Web browsers installed:
  - Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 with Service Pack 1 or later and patch Q323308
  - Netscape 7.1 or later

(The computer is required to configure the AP using the HTTP interface.)

## Regulatory Compliance and Safety Instructions

Refer to the Regulatory Compliance flyer for radio approvals, safety instructions, and regulatory information.

## Initialization

SYSTIMAX provides two tools to simplify the initialization and configuration of an AP:

- [ScanTool](#)
- [Setup Wizard](#)

ScanTool is included on the Installation CD-ROM; the Setup Wizard launches automatically the first time you access the HTTP interface.

### NOTE

These initialization instructions describe how to configure an AP over an Ethernet connection using ScanTool and the HTTP interface. If you want to configure the unit over the serial port, see [Setting IP Address using Serial Port](#) for information on how to access the CLI over a serial connection and [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for a list of supported commands.

## ScanTool

ScanTool is a software utility that is included on the installation CD-ROM. ScanTool allows you to find the IP address of an Access Point by referencing the MAC address in a Scan List, or to assign an IP address if one has not been assigned.

The tool automatically detects the Access Points installed on your network, regardless of IP address, and lets you configure each unit's IP settings. In addition, you can use ScanTool to download new software to an AP that does not have a valid software image installed (see [Client Connection Problems](#)).

To access the HTTP interface and configure the AP, the AP must be assigned an IP address that is valid on its Ethernet network. By default, the AP is configured to obtain an IP address automatically from a network Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server during boot-up. If your network contains a DHCP server, you can run ScanTool to find out what IP address the AP has been assigned. If your network does not contain a DHCP server, the Access Point's IP address defaults to 169.254.128.132. In this case, you can use ScanTool to assign the AP a static IP address that is valid on your network.

## ScanTool Instructions

Follow these steps to install ScanTool, initialize the Access Point, and perform initial configuration:

1. Locate the unit's Ethernet MAC address and write it down for future reference. The MAC address is printed on the product label. Each unit has a unique MAC address, which is assigned at the factory.
2. Confirm that the AP is connected to the same LAN subnet as the computer that you will use to configure the AP.
3. Power up, reboot, or reset the AP.
  - Result: The unit requests an IP Address from the network DHCP server.
4. Insert the Installation CD into the CD-ROM drive of the computer that you will use to configure the AP.
  - Result: The installation program will launch automatically.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions to install the Access Point software and documentation.

### NOTE

The installation program supports the following operating systems:

- Windows 98SE
  - Windows 2000
  - Windows NT
  - Windows ME
  - Windows XP
6. After the software has been installed, double-click the **ScanTool** icon on the Windows desktop to launch the program (if the program is not already running).
    - Result: ScanTool scans the subnet and displays all detected Access Points. The ScanTool's **Scan List** screen appears, as shown in the following example.

### ⇒ NOTE

If your computer has more than one network adapter installed, you will be prompted to select the adapter that you want ScanTool to use before the **Scan List** appears. If prompted, select an adapter and click **OK**. You can change your adapter setting at any time by clicking the **Select Adapter** button on the **Scan List** screen. Note that the **ScanTool Network Adapter Selection** screen will not appear if your computer only has one network adapter installed.

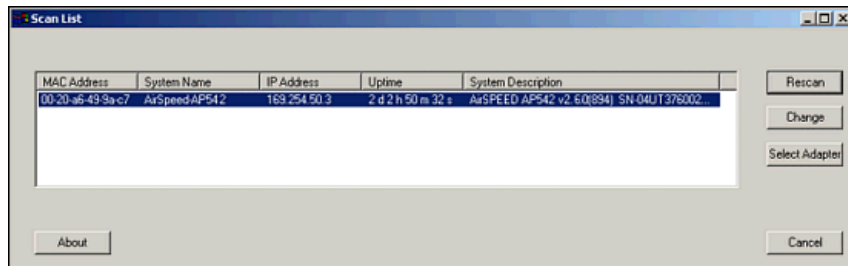


Figure 2-3 Scan List

7. Locate the MAC address of the AP you want to initialize within the Scan List.

### ⇒ NOTE

If your Access Point is not listed in the Scan List, click the **Rescan** button to update the display. If the unit still does not appear in the list, see [Troubleshooting the AirSPEED AP542](#) for suggestions. Note that after rebooting an Access Point, it may take up to five minutes for the unit to appear in the Scan List.

8. Do one of the following:

- If the AP has been assigned an IP address by a DHCP server on the network, write down the IP address and click **Cancel** to close ScanTool. Proceed to [Setup Wizard](#) for information on how to access the HTTP interface using this IP address.
- If the AP has not been assigned an IP address (in other words, the unit is using its default IP address (169.254.128.132), follow these steps to assign it a static IP address that is valid on your network:
  1. Highlight the entry for the AP you want to configure.
  2. Click the **Change** button.

The **Change** screen appears.

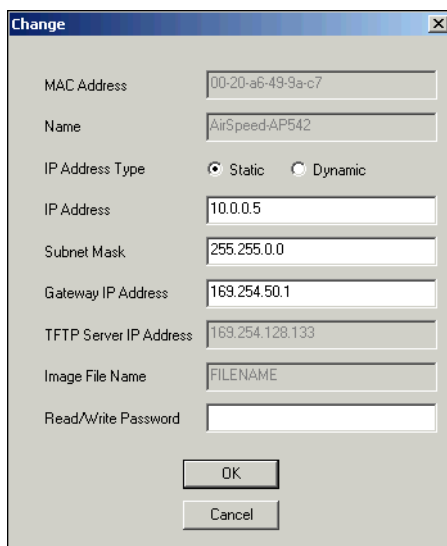


Figure 2-4 Scan Tool Change Screen

3. Set **IP Address Type** to **Static**.
4. Enter a static **IP Address** for the AP in the field provided. You must assign the unit a unique address that is valid on your IP subnet. Contact your network administrator if you need assistance selecting an IP address for the unit.
5. Enter your network's **Subnet Mask** in the field provided.
6. Enter your network's **Gateway IP Address** in the field provided.
7. Enter the SNMP Read/Write password in the **Read/Write Password** field (for new units, the default SNMP Read/Write password is "public").

### ⇒ NOTE

The TFTP Server IP Address and Image File Name fields are only available if ScanTool detects that the AP does not have a valid software image installed. See [Client Connection Problems](#).

8. Click **OK** to save your changes.
  - Result: The Access Point will reboot automatically and any changes you made will take effect.
9. When prompted, click **OK** a second time to return to the **Scan List** screen.
10. Click **Cancel** to close the ScanTool.
11. Proceed to [Setup Wizard](#) for information on how to access the HTTP interface.

## Setup Wizard

The first time you connect to an AP's HTTP interface, the Setup Wizard launches automatically. The Setup Wizard provides step-by-step instructions for how to configure the Access Point's basic operating parameter, such as Network Name, IP parameters, system parameters, and management passwords.

### Setup Wizard Instructions

Follow these steps to access the Access Point's HTTP interface and launch the Setup Wizard:

1. Open a Web browser on a network computer.
  - The HTTP interface supports the following Web browsers:
    - Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 with Service Pack 1 or later
    - Netscape 7.1 or later
2. If necessary, disable the browser's Internet proxy settings. For Internet Explorer users, follow these steps:
  - Select **Tools > Internet Options**.
  - Click the **Connections** tab.
  - Click **LAN Settings**.
  - If necessary, remove the check mark from the **Use a proxy server** box.
  - Click **OK** twice to save your changes and return to Internet Explorer.
3. Enter the Access Point's IP address in the browser's **Address** field and press **Enter**.
  - This is either the dynamic IP address assigned by a network DHCP server or the static IP address you manually configured. See [ScanTool](#) for information on how to determine the unit's IP address and manually configure a new IP address, if necessary.
  - Result: The **Enter Network Password** screen appears.

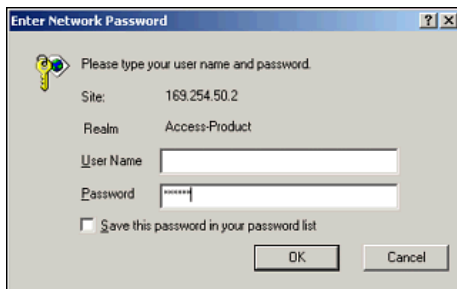
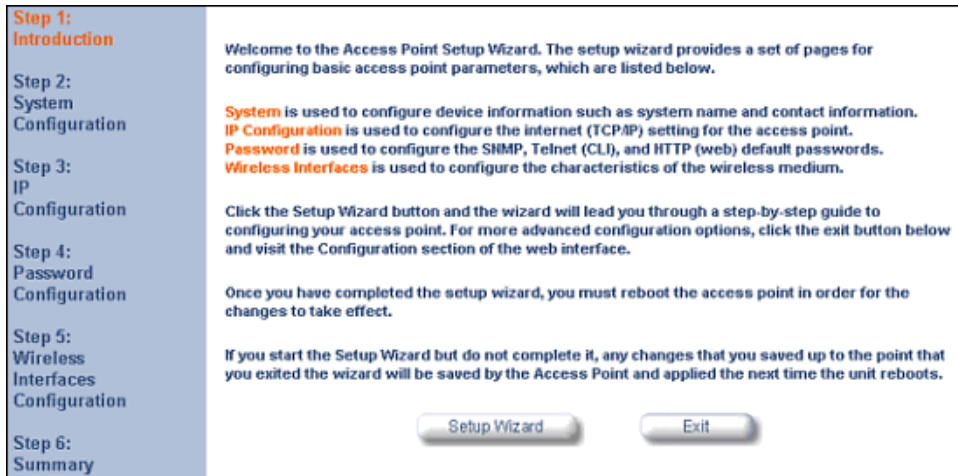


Figure 2-5 Enter Network Password

4. Enter the HTTP password in the **Password** field. Leave the **User Name** field blank. For new units, the default HTTP password is “public”.
  - Result: The Setup Wizard will launch automatically.



**Figure 2-6 Setup Wizard**

5. Click **Setup Wizard** to begin. If you want to configure the AP without using the Setup Wizard, click **Exit** and see [Performing Advanced Configuration](#).

The Setup Wizard supports the following navigation options:

- **Save & Next Button:** Each **Setup Wizard** screen has a **Save & Next** button. Click this button to submit any changes you made to the unit’s parameters and continue to the next page. The instructions below describe how to navigate the Setup Wizard using the **Save & Next** buttons.
- **Navigation Panel:** The Setup Wizard provides a navigation panel on the left-hand side of the screen. Click the link that corresponds to the parameters you want to configure to be taken to that particular configuration screen. Note that clicking a link in the navigation panel will not submit any changes you made to the unit’s configuration on the current page.
- **Exit:** The navigation panel also includes an **Exit** option. Click this link to close the Setup Wizard at any time.



### CAUTION

If you exit from the Setup Wizard, any changes you submitted (by clicking the **Save & Next** button) up to that point will be saved to the unit but will not take effect until it is rebooted.

6. Configure the System Configuration settings and click **Save & Next**. See [System](#) for more information.
7. Configure the Access Point’s basic IP Configuration settings, if necessary, and click **Save & Next**. See [Basic IP Parameters](#) for more information.
8. On the Password Configuration screen, assign the AP new passwords to prevent unauthorized access and click **Save & Next**. Each management interface has its own password:
  - SNMP Read Password
  - SNMP Read-Write Password
  - CLI Password
  - HTTP (Web) Password

By default, each of these passwords is set to “public”. See [Passwords](#) for more information.
9. Configure the basic Wireless Interface Configuration settings:
  - Select the Operational Mode as follows and click **Save & Next**:
 

The Wireless-A interface operates only in 802.11a mode. The Wireless-B interface can be configured to operate in the following modes:

    - 802.11b mode only: The radio uses the 802.11b standard only.
    - 802.11g mode only: The radio is optimized to communicate with 802.11g devices. This setting will provide the best results if this radio interface will only communicate with 802.11g devices.

- 802.11b/g mode: This is the default mode. Use this mode if you want to support a mix of 802.11b and 802.11g devices.
- In general, you should use either 802.11g only mode (if you want to support 802.11g devices only) or 802.11b/g mode to support a mix of 802.11b and 802.11g devices.
- Configure the following available options and click **Save & Next**:
    - **Primary Network Name (SSID)**: Enter a Network Name (between 1 and 32 characters long) for the wireless network. You must configure each wireless client to use this name as well. Note that the AirSPEED AP542 supports up to 16 SSIDs and VLANs per wireless interface (radio). Please refer to [Performing Advanced Configuration](#) for detailed information on configuring multiple SSIDs, VLANs, and security modes.

### ⇒ NOTE

Do not use quotation marks (single or double) in the Network Name; this will cause the AP to misinterpret the name.

- **Auto Channel Select**: By default, the AP scans the area for other Access Points and selects the best available communication channel, either a free channel (if available) or the channel with the least amount of interference. Remove the check mark to disable this option. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#) for more information and [Radio Specifications](#) for a list of available channels.
- **Frequency Channel**: When Auto Channel Select is enabled, this field is read-only and displays the Access Point's current operating channel. When Auto Channel Select is disabled, you can specify the Access Point's channel. If you decide to manually set the unit's channel, ensure that nearby devices do not use the same frequency. Available channels vary based on regulatory domain. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#) for more information and [Radio Specifications](#) for a list of available channels.
- **Transmit Rate**: Use the drop-down menu to select a specific transmit rate for the AirSPEED AP542's radios.
  - For the 802.11b/g radio operating in 802.11b mode, choose between 1, 2, 5.5, 11 Mbps/s, and Auto Fallback.
  - For the 802.11b/g radio operating in 802.11g mode, choose between 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps/s, and Auto Fallback.
  - For the 802.11 b/g radio operating in 802.11b/g mode, choose between 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps/sec, and Auto Fallback.
  - For the 802.11a radio, choose between 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps/s, and Auto Fallback.
  - The Auto Fallback feature allows the AP to select the best transmit rate based on the cell size.

### ⇒ NOTE

Additional advanced settings are available in the Interfaces tab (**Configure > Interfaces**). See [Interfaces](#) for more information.

See [SSID/VLAN/Security](#) for a description of security features, VLAN capabilities, and detailed configuration procedures.

10. Review the configuration summary. If you want to make any additional changes, use the navigation panel on the left-hand side of the screen to return to an earlier screen. After making a change, click **Save & Next** to save the change and proceed to the next screen.
11. When finished, click **Reboot** on the Summary screen to restart the AP and apply your changes.



## Latest Software Availability

SYSTIMAX periodically releases updated software for the AP at <http://www.systimax.com>. SYSTIMAX recommends that you check the Web site for the latest updates after you have installed and initialized the unit.

## Setup your TFTP Server

A Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server allows you to transfer files across a network. You can upload files from the AP for backup or copying, and you can download the files for configuration and AP Image upgrades. The Solarwinds TFTP server software is located on the AirSPEED AP542 Installation CD-ROM. You can also download the latest TFTP software from Solarwind's Web site at <http://www.solarwinds.net>.

### NOTE

If a TFTP server is not available in the network, you can perform similar file transfer operations using the HTTP interface.

After the TFTP server is installed:

- Check to see that TFTP is configured to point to the directory containing the AP Image.
- Make sure you have the proper TFTP server IP address, the proper AP Image file name, and that the TFTP server is operational.
- Make sure the TFTP server is configured to both Transmit and Receive files, with no automatic shutdown or time-out.

## Download Updates from your TFTP Server using the Web Interface

1. Download the latest software from <http://www.systimax.com>.
2. Copy the latest software updates to your TFTP server.
3. In the Web Interface, click the **Commands** button and select the **Update AP** tab.
4. Enter the IP address of your TFTP server in the field provided.
5. Enter the **File Name** (including the file extension). Enter the full directory path and file name. If the file is located in the default TFTP directory, you need enter only the file name.
6. Select the **File Type** from the drop-down menu (use *Image* for software updates).
7. Select **Download & Reboot** from the **File Operation** drop-down menu.
8. Click **OK**.
9. The Access Point will reboot automatically when the download is complete.

## Download Updates from your TFTP Server using the CLI Interface

1. Download the latest software from <http://www.systimax.com>.
2. Copy the latest software updates to your TFTP server.
3. Open the CLI interface via Telnet or a serial connection.
4. Enter the CLI password when prompted.
5. Enter the command: **download <tftpaddr> <filename> img**
  - Result: The download will begin. Be patient while the image is downloaded to the Access Point.
6. When the download is complete, type **reboot 0** and press **Enter**.

### NOTE

See [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for more information.

## Logging into the HTTP Interface

Once the AP has a valid IP Address and an Ethernet connection, you may use your web browser to monitor and configure the AP. (To configure and monitor using the command line interface, see [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#).)

1. Open a Web browser on a network computer.

### NOTE

The HTTP interface supports the following Web browser:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 with Service Pack 1 or later
- Netscape 7.1 or later

2. If necessary, disable the Internet proxy settings. For Internet Explorer users, follow these steps:
  - Select **Tools > Internet Options**.
  - Click the **Connections** tab.
  - Click **LAN Settings**.
  - If necessary, remove the check mark from the **Use a proxy server** box.
  - Click **OK** twice to save your changes and return to Internet Explorer.
3. Enter the Access Point's IP address in the browser's **Address** field and press **Enter**.

### NOTE

The default IP address of the AP is **169.254.128.132**.

The **Enter Network Password** screen is displayed.

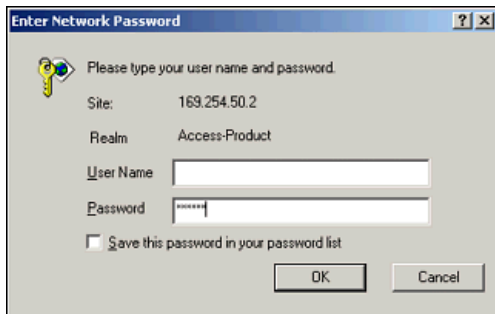


Figure 2-7 Enter Network Password Screen

4. Leave the **User Name** field blank. Enter the HTTP password in the **Password** field and click **OK**. (By default, the HTTP password is "public").  
The **System Status** screen appears.

**Status**

**System Status**

AirSPEED AP542 v2.6.0(896) SN-04UT17570638 v3.1.0

IP Address	169.254.50.2	Contact Name	Contact Name
System Name	AirSpeed-AP542	Contact Phone	Contact Phone Number
System Location	System Location	Contact Email	name@Organization.com
Up Time (DD:HH:MM:SS)	01:22:51:29	Object ID	1.3.6.1.4.1.11898.2.4.12

**System Alarms**

This table displays information on the alarms (SNMP Traps) generated by the access point. They should be deleted once they are reviewed and resolved. The alarm severity levels are: Critical, Major, Minor, and Informational.

Select All      Deselect All

Description	Severity	Time Stamp
<input type="checkbox"/> AP Cold Started.	Informational	0 days 0 hrs 0 m 19 s
<input type="checkbox"/> Link Up.	Informational	0 days 0 hrs 0 m 27 s
<input type="checkbox"/> Link Up.	Informational	0 days 0 hrs 0 m 27 s

Delete

**Figure 2-8** System Status Screen

The buttons on the left of the screen provide access to the monitoring and configuration options for the AP. See [Viewing Status Information](#) for more information about the **Status** screen.

The Command Line Interface (CLI) also provides a method for monitoring and configuring the AP using Telnet or a serial connection. For more information about monitoring and configuring the AP with the CLI, refer to [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#).

## Related Topics

The Setup Wizard helps you configure the basic AP settings required to get the unit up and running. The AP supports many other configuration and management options. The remainder of this User Guide describes these options in detail.

- See [Performing Advanced Configuration](#) for information on configuration options that are available within the Access Point's HTTP interface.
- See [Monitoring the AirSPEED AP542](#) for information on the statistics displayed within the Access Point's HTTP interface.
- See [Performing Commands](#) for information on the commands supported by the Access Point's HTTP interface.
- See [Troubleshooting the AirSPEED AP542](#) for troubleshooting suggestions.
- See [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for information on the CLI interface and for a list of CLI commands.

# 3

## Viewing Status Information

The first screen displayed after [Logging into the HTTP Interface](#) is the **System Status** screen. You can always return to this screen by clicking the **Status** button.

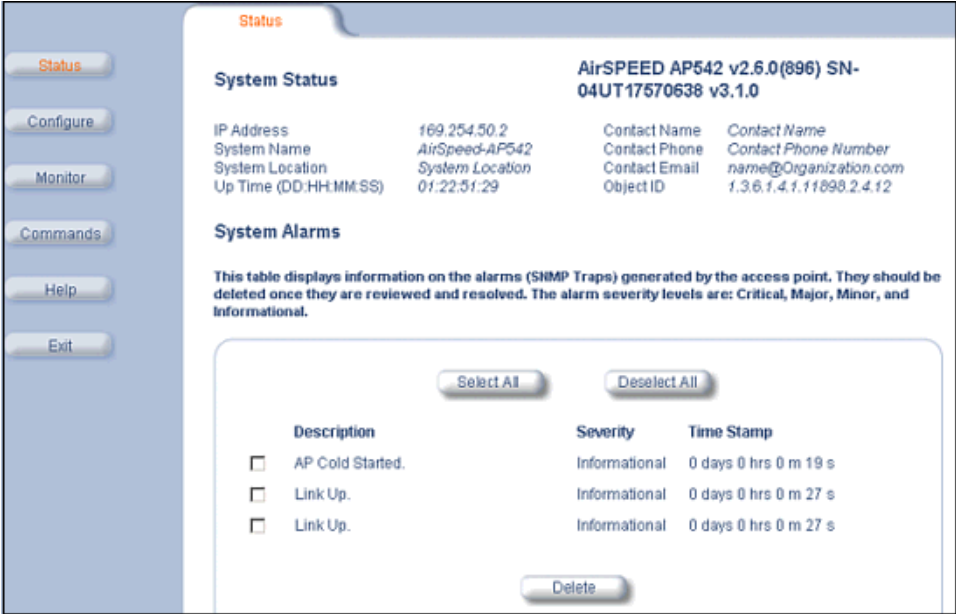


Figure 3-1 System Status Screen

The sections of the **System Status** screen provide the following information:

- **System Status:** This area provides system level information, including the unit's IP address and contact information. See [System](#) for information on these settings.
- **System Alarms:** System traps (if any) appear in this area. Each trap identifies a specific severity level: Critical, Major, Minor, and Informational. See [Alarms](#) for a list of possible alarms.

From this screen, you can also access the AP's monitoring and configuration options by clicking on the buttons on the left of the screen.

# 4

## Performing Advanced Configuration

- **System:** Configure specific system information such as system name and contact information.
- **Network:** Configure IP settings, DNS Client, DHCP Server, DHCP Relay agent, DHCP Relay Servers, and Link Integrity.
- **Interfaces:** Configure the Access Point's Wireless and Ethernet interfaces. Configure a [Wireless Distribution System \(WDS\)](#).
- **Management:** Configure the Access Point's management passwords, IP access table, and services such as secure or restricted access to the AP via SNMPv3, HTTPS, or CLI. Configure Secure Management, SSL, Secure Shell (SSH), and RADIUS based access management. Configure Automatic Configuration for Static IP. Configure Hardware Reset.
- **Filtering:** Configure Ethernet Protocol filters, Static MAC Address filters, Advanced filters, and Port filters.
- **Alarms:** Configure the Alarm (SNMP Trap) Groups, the Alarm Host Table, and the Syslog features.
- **Bridge:** Configure the Spanning Tree Protocol, Storm Threshold protection, Intra BSS traffic, and Packet Forwarding.
- **QoS:** Configure Wi-Fi Multimedia/Quality of Service parameters and QoS policies.
- **RADIUS Profiles:** Configure RADIUS features such as RADIUS Access Control and Accounting.
- **SSID/VLAN/Security:** Configure security features such as MAC Access Control, WPA, 802.11i (WPA2), WEP Encryption, and 802.1x. Configure up to 16 VLAN and SSID pairs per wireless interface, and assign Security and RADIUS Profiles for each pair.

To configure the AP using the HTTP/HTTPS interface, you must first log in to a web browser. See [Logging into the HTTP Interface](#) for instructions.

You may also configure the AP using the command line interface. Refer to [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for more information.

To configure the AP via HTTP/HTTPS:

1. Click the **Configure** button located on the left-hand side of the screen. The main **Configure** screen will be displayed.

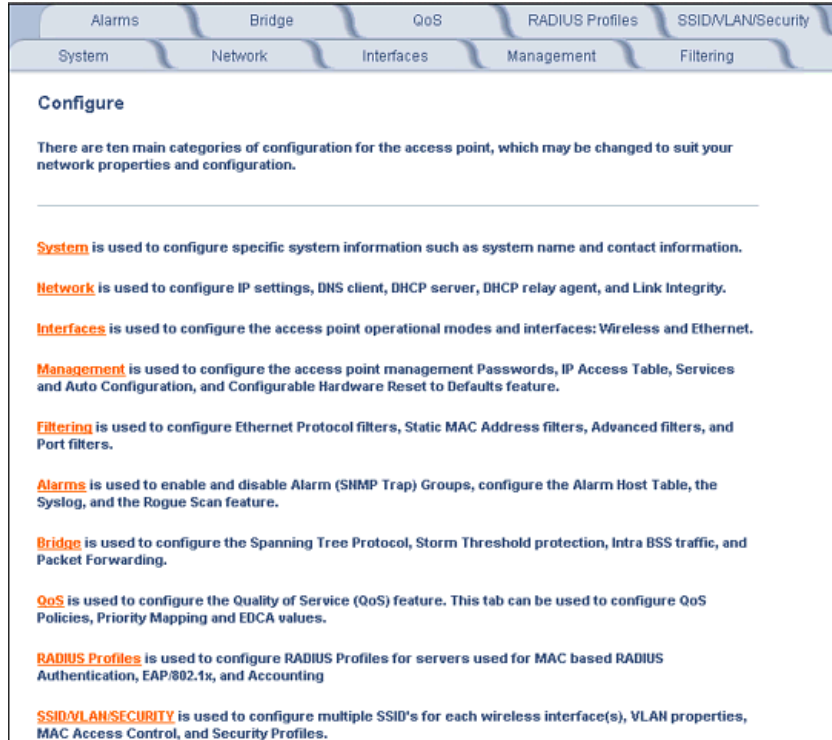


Figure 4-1 Configure Main Screen

2. Click the tab that corresponds to the parameter you want to configure. For example, click **Network** to configure the Access Point's TCP/IP settings.

Each **Configure** tab is described in the remainder of this chapter.

## System

You can configure and view the following parameters within the **System Configuration** screen:

- **Name:** The name assigned to the AP. Refer to the [Dynamic DNS Support](#) and [Access Point System Naming Convention](#) sections for rules on naming the AP.
- **Location:** The location where the AP is installed.
- **Contact Name:** The name of the person responsible for the AP.
- **Contact Email:** The email address of the person responsible for the AP.
- **Contact Phone:** The telephone number of the person responsible for the AP.
- **Object ID:** This is a read-only field that displays the Access Point's system object identification number; this information is useful if you are managing the AP using SNMP.
- **Ethernet MAC Address:** This is a read-only field that displays the unique MAC (Media Access Control) address for the Access Point's Ethernet interface. The MAC address is assigned at the factory.
- **Descriptor:** This is a read-only field that reports the Access Point's name, serial number, current image software version, and current bootloader software version.
- **Up Time:** This is a read-only field that displays how long the Access Point has been running since its last reboot.

The screenshot shows the 'System' configuration tab in a web interface. The tab is titled 'System' and contains the following information:

**This tab allows for configuration of system unique parameters and contact information.**

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

*Note: Name is also used as Dynamic DNS hostname*

*Note: Name can only contain alphanumeric characters. Hyphen is the only special character allowed. No spaces are allowed. First character can't be a numeric.*

Name	AccessPoint
Location	System Location
Contact Name	Contact Name
Contact Email	name@organization.com
Contact Phone	Contact Phone Number
Object ID	1.3.6.1.4.1.11898.2.4.12
Ethernet MAC Address	00:20:A6:53:17:E3
Descriptor	AirSPEED AP542 v2.6.0(896) SN-04UT17570638 v3.1.0
Up Time (DD:HH:MM:SS)	00:01:08:17

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 4-2 System Screen

## Dynamic DNS Support

DNS is a distributed database mapping the user readable names and IP addresses (and more) of every registered system on the Internet. Dynamic DNS is a lightweight mechanism that allows for modification of the DNS data of host systems whose IP addresses change dynamically. Dynamic DNS is usually used in conjunction with DHCP for assigning meaningful names to host systems whose IP addresses change dynamically.

Access Points provide Dynamic DNS support by adding the host name (option 12) in DHCP Client messages, which is used by the DHCP server to dynamically update the DNS server.

## Access Point System Naming Convention

The Access Point's system name is used as its host name. In order to prevent Access Points with default configurations from registering similar host names in DNS, the default system name of the Access Point is uniquely generated. Access Points generate unique system names by appending the last 3 bytes of the Access Point's MAC address to the default system name.

The system name must be compliant with the encoding rules for host name as per DNS RFC 1123. The DNS host name encoding rules are:

- Alphanumeric or hyphen characters are allowed.
- The name cannot start or end with a hyphen.
- The name cannot start with a digit.
- The number of characters has to be 63 or less. (Currently the system name length is limited to 32 bytes).

Image upgrades could cause the system to boot with an older system name format that is not DNS compliant. To prevent problems with dynamic DNS after an image upgrade, the system name will automatically be converted to a DNS compliant system name.

The rules of conversion of older system names are:

- If the length is greater than 63 characters, the string is truncated.
- All invalid characters at the beginning or end of the string are replaced with the character 'X'.
- All other invalid characters are replaced with hyphens.



## Network

The Network tab contains the following sub-tabs:

- IP Configuration
- DHCP Server
- DHCP Relay Agent
- Link Integrity

## IP Configuration

This tab is used to configure the internet (TCP/IP) settings for the Access Point.

These settings can be either entered manually (static IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) or obtained automatically (dynamic). The DNS Client functionality can also be configured, so that host names used for configuring the Access Point can be resolved to their IP addresses.

The screenshot shows the 'IP Configuration' sub-tab within the 'Network' tab. The interface includes a navigation bar with tabs for Alarms, Bridge, QoS, RADIUS Profiles, SSID/VLAN/Security, System, Network, Interfaces, Management, and Filtering. Below this, there are sub-tabs for IP Configuration, DHCP Server, DHCP R.A., and Link Integrity. The main content area contains the following fields:

- IP Address Assignment Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'Static'.
- IP Address:** A text field containing '169.254.50.2'.
- Subnet Mask:** A text field containing '255.255.0.0'.
- Gateway IP Address:** A text field containing '169.254.50.1'.
- Enable DNS Client:** A checkbox that is unchecked.
- DNS Primary Server IP Address:** A text field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- DNS Secondary Server IP Address:** A text field containing '0.0.0.0'.
- DNS Client Default Domain Name:** An empty text field.
- Default TTL (Time To Live):** A text field containing '64'.

At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. A note at the top of the form states: 'Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.'

Figure 4-3 IP Configuration Screen

You can configure and view the following parameters within the **IP Configuration** sub-tab:

### NOTE

You must reboot the Access Point in order for any changes to the Basic IP or DNS Client parameters to take effect.

### Basic IP Parameters

- **IP Address Assignment Type:** Set this parameter to **Dynamic** to configure the Access Point as a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) client; the Access Point will obtain IP settings from a network DHCP server automatically during boot-up. If you do not have a DHCP server or if you want to manually configure the Access Point's IP settings, set this parameter to **Static**.
- **IP Address:** The Access Point's IP address. When IP Address Assignment Type is set to Dynamic, this field is read-only and reports the unit's current IP address. The Access Point will default to 169.254.128.132 if it cannot obtain an address from a DHCP server.

- **Subnet Mask:** The Access Point's subnet mask. When IP Address Assignment Type is set to Dynamic, this field is read-only and reports the unit's current subnet mask. The subnet mask will default to 255.255.0.0 if the unit cannot obtain one from a DHCP server.
- **Gateway IP Address:** The IP address of the Access Point's gateway. When IP Address Assignment Type is set to Dynamic, this field is read-only and reports the IP address of the unit's gateway. The gateway IP address will default to 169.254.128.133 if the unit cannot obtain an address from a DHCP server.

### DNS Client

If you prefer to use host names to identify network servers rather than IP addresses, you can configure the AP to act as a Domain Name Service (DNS) client. When this feature is enabled, the Access Point contacts the network's DNS server to translate a host name to the appropriate network IP address. You can use this DNS Client functionality to identify RADIUS servers by host name.

- **Enable DNS Client:** Place a check mark in the box provided to enable DNS client functionality. Note that this option must be enabled before you can configure the other DNS Client parameters.
- **DNS Primary Server IP Address:** The IP address of the network's primary DNS server.
- **DNS Secondary Server IP Address:** The IP address of a second DNS server on the network. The Access Point will attempt to contact the secondary server if the primary server is unavailable.
- **DNS Client Default Domain Name:** The default domain name for the Access Point's network (for example, "systimax.com"). Contact your network administrator if you need assistance setting this parameter.

### Advanced

- **Default TTL (Time to Live):** Time to Live (TTL) is a field in an IP packet that specifies how long in seconds the packet can remain active on the network. The Access Point uses the default TTL for packets it generates for which the transport layer protocol does not specify a TTL value. This parameter supports a range from 0 to 255. By default, TTL is 64.

## DHCP Server

If your network does not have a DHCP Server, you can configure the AP as a DHCP server to assign dynamic IP addresses to Ethernet nodes and wireless clients.



### CAUTION

Make sure there are no other DHCP servers on the network and do not enable the DHCP server without checking with your network administrator first, as it could disrupt normal network operation. Also, the AP must be configured with a static IP address before enabling this feature.

When the DHCP Server functionality is enabled, you can create one or more IP address pools from which to assign addresses to network devices.

Figure 4-4 DHCP Server Configuration Screen

You can configure and view the following parameters within the **DHCP Server Configuration** screen:

- **Enable DHCP Server:** Place a check mark in the box provided to enable DHCP Server functionality.

### NOTE

You cannot enable the DHCP Server functionality unless there is at least one IP Pool Table entry configured.

- **Subnet Mask:** This field is read-only and reports the Access Point's current subnet mask. DHCP clients that receive dynamic addresses from the AP will be assigned this same subnet mask.
- **Gateway IP Address:** The AP will assign the specified address to its DHCP clients.
- **Primary DNS IP Address:** The AP will assign the specified address to its DHCP clients.
- **Secondary DNS IP Address:** The AP will assign the specified address to its DHCP clients.
- **Number of IP Pool Table Entries:** This is a read-only field that reports the number of entries in the IP Pool Table.
- **IP Pool Table:** Each entry in this table specifies a range of IP addresses that the AP can assign to its wireless clients. Click **Add** to create a new entry. Click **Edit** to change an existing entry. Each entry contains the following field:
  - **Start IP Address**
  - **End IP Address**

- **Default Lease Time (optional):** The default time value for clients to retain the assigned IP address. DHCP automatically renews IP Addresses without client notification. This parameter supports a range between 0 and 86400 seconds. The default is 86400 seconds.
- **Maximum Lease Time (optional):** The maximum time value for clients to retain the assigned IP address. DHCP automatically renews IP Addresses without client notification. This parameter supports a range between 0 and 86400 seconds. The default is 86400 seconds.
- **Comment (optional)**
- **Status:** IP Pools are enabled upon entry in the table. You can also disable or delete entries by changing this field's value.

### ➤ NOTE

You must reboot the Access Point before changes to any of these DHCP server parameters take effect.

## DHCP Relay Agent

When enabled, the DHCP relay agent forwards DHCP requests to the set DHCP server.

Click the **Configure > Network tab > DHCP R A** to configure DHCP Relay Agent servers and enable the DHCP Relay Agent.

### ➤ NOTE

At least one DHCP server must be enabled before DHCP Relay Agent can be enabled.

The DHCP Relay functionality of the AP supports Option 82 and sends the system name of the AP (as a NAS identifier) as a sub-option of Option 82.

The AP makes a DHCP Request for lease renewal five minutes ahead of the expiration of the Rebinding time as specified in the DHCP Offer from the DHCP server obtained during the last renewal.

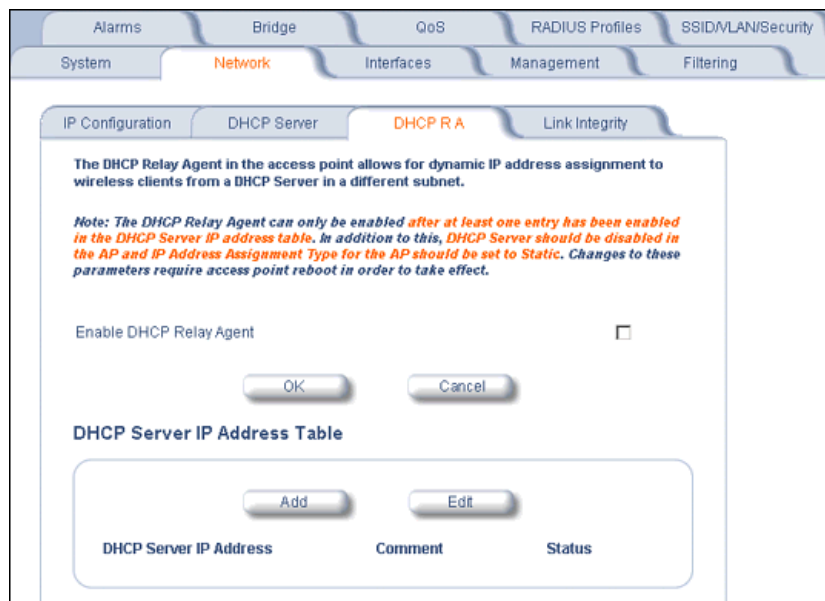


Figure 4-5 DHCP Relay Agent

## DHCP Server IP Address Table

To add entries to the table of DHCP Relay Agents, click **Add** in the DHCP Server IP Address Table; the following window is displayed.

The AP supports the configuration of a maximum of 10 server settings in the DHCP Relay Agents server table. At least one server must be configured to enable DHCP Relay.

Figure 4-6 DHCP Server IP Address Table - Add Entries

To edit or delete entries in the table, click **Edit**; the following window appears. Make your changes and click **OK**.

Figure 4-7 DHCP Server IP Address Table - Edit Entries

## Link Integrity

The Link Integrity feature checks the link between the AP and the nodes on the Ethernet backbone. These nodes are listed by IP address in the Link Integrity IP Address Table. The AP periodically pings the nodes listed within the table. If the AP loses network connectivity (that is, the ping attempts fail), the AP disables its wireless interface(s). Note that this feature does not affect WDS links (if WDS links are configured and enabled).

You can configure and view the following parameters within the **Link Integrity Configuration** screen:

- **Enable Link Integrity:** Place a check mark in the box provided to enable Link Integrity.
- **Poll Interval (milliseconds):** The interval between link integrity checks. Range is 500 - 15000 ms in increments of 500 ms; default is 500 ms.
- **Poll Retransmissions:** The number of times a poll should be retransmitted before the link is considered down. Range is 0 to 255; default is 5.
- **Target IP Address Entry:** This entry specifies the IP address of a host on the network that the AP will periodically poll to confirm connectivity. The table can hold up to five entries. By default, all five entries are set to 0.0.0.0. Click **Edit** to update one or more entries. Each entry contains the following field:
  - **Target IP Address**
  - **Comment (optional)**
  - **Status:** Set this field to **Enable** to specify that the Access Point should poll this device. You can also disable an entry by changing this field's value to **Disable**.



Figure 4-8 Link Integrity Configuration Screen

## Interfaces

From the **Interfaces** tab, you configure the Access Point's operational mode, power control settings, wireless interface settings and Ethernet settings. You can configure the operational mode for the 802.11b/g radio (wireless interface B) and the Transmit Power Control settings for each radio. You may also configure a Wireless Distribution System for AP-to-AP communications. The **Interfaces** tab contains the following sub-tabs:

- [Operational Mode](#)
  - [Super Mode and Turbo Mode](#)
  - **Enable 802.11d**: enables IEEE 802.11d support for additional regulatory domains. Refer to the [IEEE 802.11d Support for Additional Regulatory Domains](#) and [Configuring 802.11d Support](#) sections.
  - **ISO/IEC 3166-1 Country Code**: the country (regulatory domain) where the AP is located.
  - **Enable TX Power Control**: enables TX Power Control to control transmit power of 802.11-enabled clients within an IBSS. Refer to the [TX Power Control](#) and [Configuring TX Power Control](#) sections.
  - **Transmit Power Level**: the power level of the interface when IBSS Power Control is enabled. Allowed values are 100%, 50%, 25%, or 12.5%.
- [Wireless-A \(802.11a radio\) and Wireless-B \(802.11b/g radio\)](#)
- [Ethernet](#)

## Operational Mode

From this tab, you can configure and view the operational mode for Wireless-A (802.11a radio) or Wireless-B (802.11b/g radio) interfaces.

The Wireless-A interface operates only in 802.11a mode. The Wireless-B interface can be configured to operate in the following modes:

- **802.11b mode only:** The radio uses the 802.11b standard only.
- **802.11g mode only:** The radio is optimized to communicate with 802.11g devices. This setting will provide the best results if this radio interface will only communicate with 802.11g devices.
- **802.11b/g mode:** This is the default mode. Use this mode if you want to support a mix of 802.11b and 802.11g devices.

In general, you should use either 802.11g only mode (if you want to support 802.11g devices only) or 802.11b/g mode to support a mix of 802.11b and 802.11g devices.

## Super Mode and Turbo Mode

Super mode improves throughput between the Access Point and wireless clients that support this capability. For wireless clients that support this capability, the AP will negotiate and treat them accordingly; for clients that do not support Super mode, the AP will treat them as normal wireless clients.

Super mode can be configured only when the wireless operational mode is one of the following:

- 802.11g only mode
- 802.11b/g mode
- 802.11a only mode

Dynamic Turbo mode is supported in 802.11a and 802.11g mode. Dynamic Turbo mode supports turbo speeds at twice the standard 802.11a or 802.11g data rates, and also dynamically switches between Turbo mode speeds and normal speeds depending on the wireless client. If Turbo mode is enabled, then this is displayed in the web UI and the transmit speeds and channels pull-down menus are updated with the valid values.

When Turbo mode is enabled, only a subset of the wireless channels on both the 2.4 GHz and 5.0 GHz spectrum can be used.

Turbo mode can be enabled only when Super Mode has already been enabled.

The Super 802.11g mode, Super 802.11a mode, and Turbo 802.11g mode are supported in all regulatory domains. However, Turbo 802.11a mode is not available in the Japan regulatory domain.

## IEEE 802.11d Support for Additional Regulatory Domains

The IEEE 802.11d specification allows conforming equipment to operate in more than one regulatory domain. IEEE 802.11d support allows the AP to broadcast its radio's regulatory domain information in its beacon and probe responses to clients. This allows clients to passively learn what country they are in and only transmit in the allowable spectrum. When a client enters a regulatory domain, it passively scans to learn at least one valid channel, i.e., a channel upon which it detects IEEE Standard 802.11 frames.

The beacon frame contains information on the country code, the maximum allowable transmit power, and the channels to be used for the regulatory domain.

The same information is transmitted in probe response frames in response to a client's probe requests. Once the client has acquired the information required to meet the transmit requirements of the regulatory domain, it configures itself for operation in the regulatory domain.

The radio determines the regulatory domain the AP is operating in. Depending on the regulatory domain, a default country code is chosen that is transmitted in the beacon and probe response frames.

### Configuring 802.11d Support

Perform the following procedure to enable 802.11d support, and select the country code:

1. Click **Configure > Interfaces > Operational Mode**.
2. Select **Enable 802.11d**.
3. Select the Country Code from the ISO/IEC 3166-1 Country Code drop-down menu.
4. Click **OK**.



5. Configure Transmit Power Control and transmit power level if required.

## TX Power Control

Transmit Power Control uses standard 802.11d frames to control transmit power within an infrastructure BSS. This method of power control is considered to be an interim way of controlling the transmit power of 802.11d enabled clients in lieu of implementation of 802.11h.

The Transmit Power Control feature lets the user configure the transmit power level of the wireless interface at one of four levels:

- 100% of the maximum transmit power level defined by the regulatory domain
- 50%
- 25%
- 12.5%

When Transmit Power Control is enabled, the transmit power level of the radio in the AP is set to the configured transmit power level. The power level is advertised in Beacon and Probe Response frames as the 802.11d maximum transmit power level.

When an 802.11d-enabled client learns the regulatory domain related information from Beacon and Probe Response frames, it learns the power level advertised in Beacon and Probe response frames as the maximum transmit power of the regulatory domain and configures itself to operate with that power level.

As a result, the transmit power level of the BSS is configured to the power level set in the AP (assuming that the BSS has only 802.11d enabled clients and an 802.11d enabled AP).

### Configuring TX Power Control

1. Click **Configure > Interfaces > Operational Mode**.
2. Select **Enable Transmit Power Control**.
3. Select the transmit power level for wireless interface A or B from the Wireless-A or Wireless-B: Transmit Power Level drop-down menu.
4. Click **OK**.

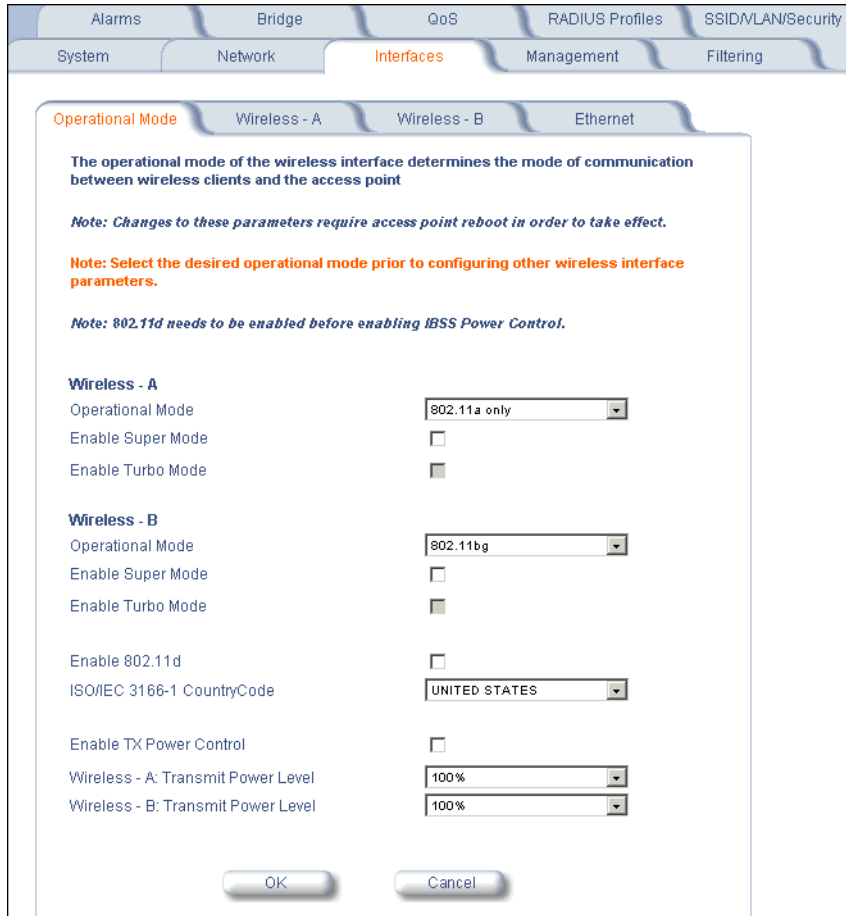


Figure 4-9 Operational Mode Screen

## Wireless-A (802.11a radio) and Wireless-B (802.11b/g radio)

Alarms Bridge QoS RADIUS Profiles SSID/LAN/Security

System Network Interfaces Management Filtering

Operational Mode Wireless - A **Wireless - B** Ethernet

Wireless interface properties determine the characteristics of the wireless medium as well as how wireless clients will communicate with the access point.

Verify configuration of the desired operational mode prior to configuring the wireless interface properties below.

Note: This page allows configuration of a single SSID (Wireless Network Name); in order to configure more than one SSID, please visit the [SSID/LAN/Security](#) page.

Note: Changes to these parameters except Wireless Service Status require access point reboot in order to take effect.

Physical Interface Type	802.11g (OFDM / DSSS 2.4 GHz)
MAC Address	00:20:A6:53:17:E2
Regulatory Domain	USA (FCC)
Network Name (SSID)	My Wireless Network B
Enable Auto Channel Select	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Frequency Channel	1 - 2.412 GHz
Transmit Rate	Auto Fallback
DTIM Period (1-255)	1
RTS/CTS Medium Reservation (2347=off)	2347
Enable Closed System	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wireless Service Status	Resume

OK Cancel

Figure 4-10 Wireless-B Interface

You can view and configure the following parameters for the Wireless-A and Wireless-B interfaces.

### ⇒ NOTE

You must reboot the Access Point before any changes to these parameters take effect.

- **Physical Interface Type:** Depending on the Operational Mode, this field reports:
  - For 802.11b mode only: "802.11b (CCK/DSSS 2.4 GHz)"
  - For 802.11g mode: "802.11g (OFDM/DSSS 2.4 GHz)"
  - For 802.11b/g mode: "802.11b/g (ERP-CCK/DSSS/OFDM 2.4 GHz)"
  - For 802.11a mode only: "802.11a (OFDM 5 GHz)"

OFDM stands for Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing; this is the name for the radio technology used by 802.11a devices. DSSS stands for Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum; this is the name for the radio technology used by 802.11b devices.
- **MAC Address:** This is a read-only field that displays the unique MAC (Media Access Control) address for the Access Point's wireless interface. The MAC address is assigned at the factory.
- **Regulatory Domain:** Reports the regulatory domain for which the AP is certified. Not all features or channels are available in all countries. The available regulatory domains include:

#### For 802.11a:

- FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia
- ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, Iceland, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Switzerland
- ASIA: China, Hong Kong, South Korea
- SG: Singapore
- TELEC: Japan
- TW: Taiwan

**For 802.11b/g:**

- FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia
- ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, China, Iceland, India, Hong Kong, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, South Korea, Switzerland, Taiwan, United Arab Emirates
- TELEC: Japan
- **Network Name (SSID):** Enter a Network Name (between 1 and 32 characters long) for the primary wireless network. You must configure each wireless client using this network to use this name as well. Additional SSIDs and VLANs may be configured under **Configure > SSID/VLAN/Security**. Up to 16 SSID/VLAN pairs may be configured per wireless interface.

**⇒ NOTE**

Do not use quotation marks (single or double) in the Network Name; this will cause the AP to misinterpret the name.

- **Auto Channel Select:** The AP scans the area for other Access Points and selects a free or relatively unused communication channel. This helps prevent interference problems and increases network performance. By default this feature is enabled. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#) for more information and [Radio Specifications](#) for a list of available channels.
- **Frequency Channel:** When Auto Channel Select is enabled, this field is read-only and displays the Access Point's current operating channel. When Auto Channel Select is disabled, you can specify the Access Point's operating channel. If you decide to manually set the unit's channel, ensure that nearby devices do not use the same frequency (unless you are setting up WDS links). Available Channels vary based on regulatory domain. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#) for more information and [Radio Specifications](#) for a list of available channels.
- **Transmit Rate:** Select a specific transmit rate for the AP. The values available depend on the Operational Mode. Auto Fallback is the default setting; it allows the AP to select the best transmit rate based on the cell size.
  - For 802.11b only -- Auto Fallback, 1, 2, 5.5, 11 Mbits/sec
  - For 802.11g only -- Auto Fallback, 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbits/sec
  - For 802.11b/g -- Auto Fallback, 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbits/sec
  - For 802.11a only -- Auto Fallback, 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbits/sec
- **DTIM Period:** The Deferred Traffic Indicator Map (DTIM) is used with clients that have power management enabled. DTIM should be left at 1, the default value, if any clients have power management enabled. This parameter supports a range between 1 and 255.
- **RTS/CTS Medium Reservation:** This parameter affects message flow control and should not be changed under normal circumstances. Range is 0 to 2347. When set to a value between 0 and 2347, the Access Point uses the RTS/CTS mechanism for packets that are the specified size or greater. When set to 2347 (the default setting), RTS/CTS is disabled. See [RTS/CTS Medium Reservation](#) for more information.
- **Closed System:** Check this box to allow only clients configured with the Access Point's specific Network Name to associate with the Access Point. When enabled, a client configured with the Network Name "ANY" cannot connect to the AP. This option is disabled by default.
- **Wireless Service Status:** Select shutdown to shutdown the wireless service on a wireless interface, or resume to resume wireless service. See [Wireless Service Status](#) for more information.
- **Load Balancing Max Clients:** Load balancing distributes clients among available access points. Enter a number between 1 and 63 to specify the maximum number of clients to allow.
- **Wireless Distribution System:** A Wireless Distribution system can be used to establish point-to-point (i.e. wireless backhaul) connections with other access points. See [Wireless Distribution System \(WDS\)](#) for configuration information.

**Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS)**

The European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) requires that 802.11a Access Points operating in the middle frequency band use a technique called Dynamic Frequency Selection to prevent interference with radar systems and other devices that occupy the 5 GHz band.

802.11a APs certified in the ETSI regulatory domain (see [Affected Countries](#)) and operating in the middle frequency band thus select an operating channel through a combination of Auto Channel Select (ACS) and Dynamic Frequency Selection. During boot-up, ACS scans the available channels and selects the best channel. When the AP enters normal operation, DFS works in the background to detect radar interference on that channel. If interference is detected, the AP automatically reboots, and ACS re-scans and selects a better channel that is free of interference.

If ACS is disabled, only channels in the lower frequency band are available for use:

- 36: 5.18 GHz (default)
- 40: 5.200 GHz
- 44: 5.220 GHz
- 48: 5.240 GHz

### Affected Countries

The following countries are certified in the ETSI regulatory domain for operation in the 5 GHz band:

- |           |               |                |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|
| – Austria | – Greece      | – Norway       |
| – Belgium | – Iceland     | – Poland       |
| – Brazil  | – Ireland     | – Portugal     |
| – Cyprus  | – Italy       | – Saudi Arabia |
| – Denmark | – Latvia      | – Spain        |
| – Estonia | – Lithuania   | – Sweden       |
| – Finland | – Luxembourg  | – Switzerland  |
| – France  | – Malta       | – UK           |
| – Germany | – Netherlands |                |

### RTS/CTS Medium Reservation

The 802.11 standard supports optional RTS/CTS communication based on packet size. Without RTS/CTS, a sending radio listens to see if another radio is already using the medium before transmitting a data packet. If the medium is free, the sending radio transmits its packet. However, there is no guarantee that another radio is not transmitting a packet at the same time, causing a collision. This typically occurs when there are hidden nodes (clients that can communicate with the Access Point but are out of range of each other) in very large cells.

When RTS/CTS occurs, the sending radio first transmits a Request to Send (RTS) packet to confirm that the medium is clear. When the receiving radio successfully receives the RTS packet, it transmits back a Clear to Send (CTS) packet to the sending radio. When the sending radio receives the CTS packet, it sends the data packet to the receiving radio. The RTS and CTS packets contain a reservation time to notify other radios (including hidden nodes) that the medium is in use for a specified period. This helps to minimize collisions. While RTS/CTS adds overhead to the radio network, it is particularly useful for large packets that take longer to resend after a collision occurs.

RTS/CTS Medium Reservation is an advanced parameter and supports a range between 0 and 2347 bytes. When set to 2347 (the default setting), the RTS/CTS mechanism is disabled. When set to 0, the RTS/CTS mechanism is used for all packets. When set to a value between 0 and 2347, the Access Point uses the RTS/CTS mechanism for packets that are the specified size or greater. You should not need to enable this parameter for most networks unless you suspect that the wireless cell contains hidden nodes.

### Wireless Service Status

The user can shut down (or resume) the wireless service on the wireless interface of the AP through the CLI, HTTP, or SNMP interface. When the wireless service on a wireless interface is shut down, the AP will:

- Stop the AP services to wireless clients connected on that wireless interface by disassociating them
- Disable the associated BSS port on that interface
- Disable the transmission and reception of frames on that interface
- Indicate the wireless service shutdown status of the wireless interface through LED and traps
- Enable Ethernet interface so that it can receive a wireless service resume command through CLI/HTTP/SNMP interface



#### NOTE

WSS disables only BSS ports; WDS ports are still operational.



#### NOTE

The wireless service cannot be shutdown on an interface where Rogue Scan is enabled.

In shutdown state, the AP will not transmit and receive frames from the wireless interface and will stop transmitting periodic beacons. Moreover, none of the frames received from the Ethernet interface will be forwarded to that wireless interface.

Wireless service on a wireless interface of the AP can be resumed through CLI/HTTP/SNMP management interface. When wireless service on a wireless interface is resumed, the AP will:

- Enable the transmission and reception of frames on that wireless interface
- Enable the associated BSS port on that interface
- Start the AP services to wireless clients
- Indicate the wireless service resume status of the wireless interface through LED and traps

After wireless service resumes, the AP resumes beaconing, transmitting and receiving frames to/from the wireless interface and bridging the frames between the Ethernet and the wireless interface.

**Traps Generated During Wireless Service Shutdown (and Resume)**

The following traps are generated during wireless service shutdown and resume, and are also sent to any configured Syslog server.

When the wireless service is shutdown on a wireless interface, the AP generates a trap called *oriTrapWirelessServiceShutdown*.

When the wireless service is resumed on a wireless interface, the AP generates a trap called *oriTrapWirelessServiceResumed*.

 **NOTE**

In the AirSPEED AP542, which has dual wireless interfaces, wireless service can be shut down/resumed on each wireless interface individually.

**Multicast Rate**

The multicast rate determines the rate at which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted by the Access Point to the wireless network. Stations that are closer to the Access Point can receive multicast packets at a faster data rate than stations that are farther away from the AP. Therefore, you should set the Multicast Rate based on the size of the Access Point's cell.

 **NOTE**

Multicast Rate cannot be set by the HTTP interface, but must be set via CLI.

Cells of different sizes have different capacities and, therefore, suit different applications. For instance, a typical office has many stations that require high bandwidth for complex, high-speed data processing. In contrast, a typical warehouse has a few forklifts requiring low bandwidth for simple transactions.

Cell capacities are compared in the following table, which shows that small cells suit most offices and large cells suit most warehouses:

Small Cell	Large Cell
Physically accommodates few stations	Physically accommodates many stations
High cell bandwidth per station	Lower cell bandwidth per station
High transmit rate	Lower transmit rate

**Coverage**

The number of Access Points in a set area determines the network coverage for that area. A large number of Access Points covering a small area is a high-density cell. A few Access Points, or even a single unit, covering the same small area would result in a low-density cell, even though in both cases the actual area did not change — only the number of Access Points covering the area changed.

In a typical office, a high density area consists of a number of Access Points installed every 20 feet and each Access Point generates a small radio cell with a diameter of about 10 feet. In contrast, a typical warehouse might have a low density area consisting of large cells (with a diameter of about 90 feet) and Access Points installed every 200 feet.

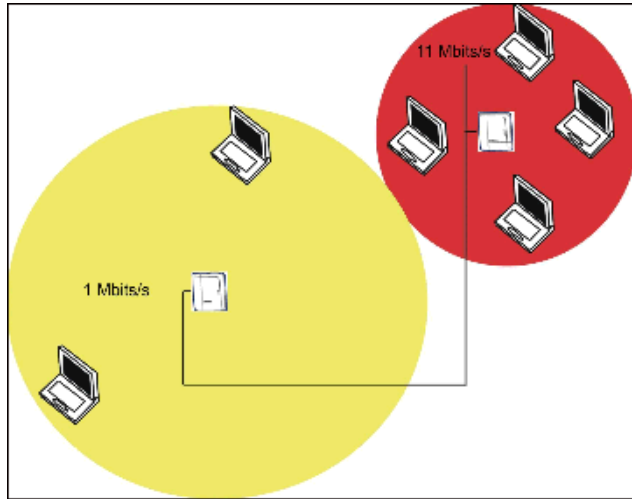


Figure 4-11 1 Mbits/s and 11 Mbits/s Multicast Rates

## Wireless Distribution System (WDS)

A Wireless Distribution System (WDS) creates a link between two 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11b/g APs over their radio interfaces. This link relays traffic from one AP that does not have Ethernet connectivity to a second AP that has Ethernet connectivity. WDS allows you to configure up to six (6) point-to-point links between Access Points.

In the WDS example below, AP 1 and AP 2 communicate over a WDS link (represented by the blue line). This link provides Client 1 with access to network resources even though AP 1 is not directly connected to the Ethernet network. Packets destined for or sent by the client are relayed between the Access Points over the WDS link.

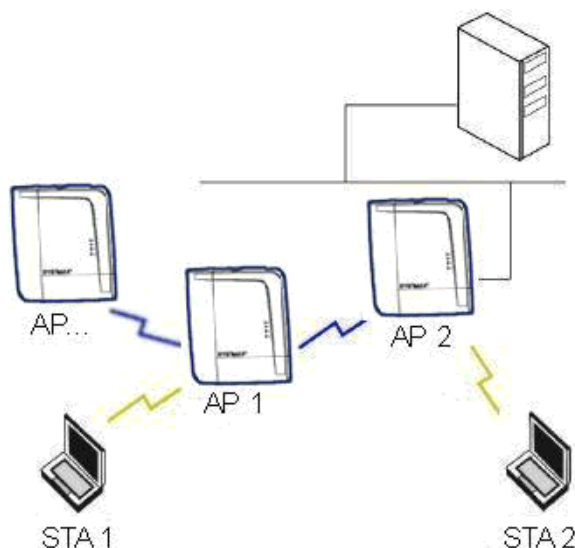


Figure 4-12 WDS Example

### Bridging WDS

Each WDS link is mapped to a logical WDS port on the AP. WDS ports behave like Ethernet ports rather than like standard wireless interfaces: on a BSS port, an Access Point learns by association and from frames; on a WDS or Ethernet port, an Access Point learns from frames only. When setting up a WDS, keep in mind the following:

- There are separate security settings for clients and WDS links. The same WDS link security mode must be configured (currently we only support none or WEP) on each Access Point in the WDS, and the same WEP key must be configured.
- The WDS link shares the communication bandwidth with the clients. Therefore, while the maximum data rate for the Access Point's cell is 54 Mbits/s (802.11a, 802.11g only, or 802.b/g modes) or 11 Mbits/s (802.11b only mode), client throughput will decrease when the WDS link is active.
- If there is no partner MAC address configured in the WDS table, the WDS port remains disabled.
- Each WDS port on a single AP should have a unique partner MAC address. Do not enter the same MAC address twice in an AP's WDS port list.
- Each Access Point that is a member of the WDS must have the same channel setting to communicate with each other.
- If your network does not support spanning tree, be careful to avoid creating network loops between APs. For example, creating a WDS link between two Access Points connected to the same Ethernet network will create a network loop (if spanning tree is disabled). For more information, refer to the [Spanning Tree](#) section.

### WDS Setup Procedure

#### ➤ NOTE

You must disable Auto Channel Select to create a WDS. Each Access Point that is a member of the WDS must have the same Channel setting to communicate with each other.



To setup a wireless backbone, follow the steps below for each AP that you wish to include in the Wireless Distribution System.

1. Confirm that Auto Channel Select is disabled.
2. Write down the MAC Address of the radio that you wish to include in the Wireless Distribution System.
3. Click **Configure > Interfaces > Wireless-A or Wireless-B**.
4. Scroll down to the **Wireless Distribution System** heading.

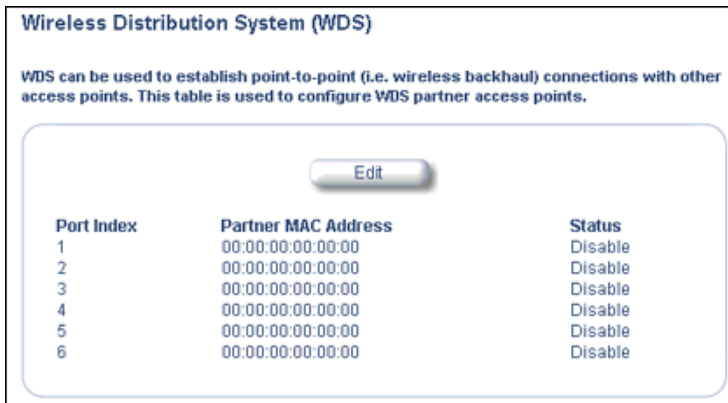


Figure 4-13 WDS Configuration

5. Click the **Edit** button to update the Wireless Distribution System (WDS) Table.

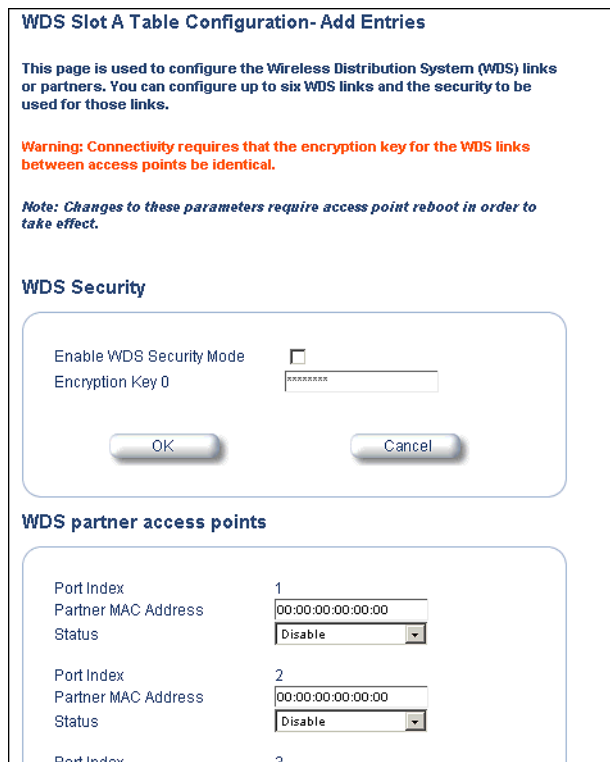


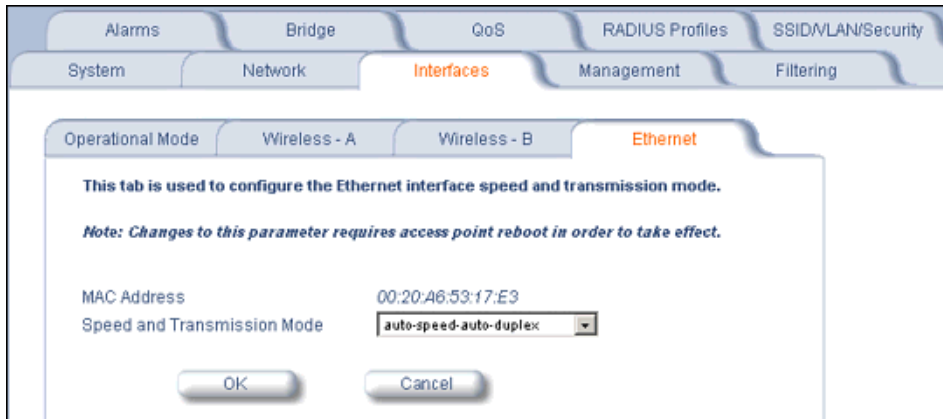
Figure 4-14 Adding WDS Links

6. Select whether to use encryption in the WDS by checking the **Enable WDS Security Mode** checkbox.
7. If you enabled WDS Security Mode, enter the **Encryption Key 0** used for encryption between the WDS links.

8. Enter the MAC Address that you wrote down in Step 2 in one of the **Partner MAC Address** field of the Wireless Distribution Setup window.
9. Set the **Status** of the device to **Enable**.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Reboot the AP.

## Ethernet

From this tab, you may select the desired speed and transmission mode from the drop-down menu. Half-duplex means that only one side of the link can transmit at a time and full-duplex allows both sides of the link to transmit. When set to auto-duplex, the AP negotiates with its switch or hub to automatically select the highest throughput option supported by both sides.



**Figure 4-15 Ethernet Configuration**

For best results, SYSTIMAX recommends that you configure the Ethernet setting to match the speed and transmission mode of the device the Access Point is connected to (such as a hub or switch). If in doubt, leave this setting at its default, **auto-speed-auto-duplex**. Choose between:

- 10 Mbit/s - half duplex or full duplex
- 100 Mbit/s - half duplex or full duplex
- Auto speed - auto duplex

## Management

The Management tab contains the following sub-tabs.

- [Passwords](#)
- [IP Access Table](#)
- [Services](#)
- [Automatic Configuration \(AutoConfig\)](#)
- [Hardware Configuration Reset \(CHRD\)](#)

## Passwords

You can configure the following passwords:

- **SNMP Read Community Password:** The password for read access to the AP using SNMP. Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. Passwords must be between 6 and 32 characters. The default password is “public”.
- **SNMP Read/Write Community Password:** The password for read and write access to the AP using SNMP. Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. Passwords must be between 6 and 32 characters. The default password is “public”.
- **SNMPv3 Authentication Password:** The password used for authentication when SNMPv3 (secure management) is enabled. Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. This password must be between 6 and 32 characters, but a length of at least 8 characters is recommended. The default password is “public”. Note that Secure Management (Services tab) must be enabled to configure SNMPv3. The default SNMPv3 username is **administrator**, with SHA authentication, and DES privacy protocol.
- **SNMPv3 Privacy Password:** The password used for encrypting SNMP messages when SNMPv3 (secure management) is enabled. Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. This password must be between 6 and 32 characters, but a length of at least 8 characters is recommended. The default password is “public”. Note that Secure Management (Services tab) must be enabled to configure SNMPv3.
- **Telnet (CLI) Password:** The password for the CLI interface (via serial or Telnet). Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. Passwords must be between 6 and 32 characters. The default password is “public”.
- **HTTP (Web) Password:** The password for the Web browser HTTP interface. Enter a password in both the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field. Passwords must be between 6 and 32 characters. The default password is “public”.

### NOTE

For security purposes SYSTIMAX recommends changing ALL PASSWORDS from the default “public” immediately, to restrict access to your network devices to authorized personnel. If you lose or forget your password settings, you can always perform the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#).

## IP Access Table

The Management IP Access Table limits in-band management access to the IP addresses or range of IP addresses specified in the table. This feature applies to all management services (SNMP, HTTP, and CLI) except for CLI management over the serial port. To configure this table, click **Add** and set the following parameters:

- **IP Address:** Enter the IP Address for the management station.
- **IP Mask:** Enter a mask that will act as a filter to limit access to a range of IP Addresses based on the IP Address you already entered.
  - The IP mask 255.255.255.255 would authorize the single station defined by the IP Address to configure the Access Point. The AP would ignore commands from any other IP address. In contrast, the IP mask 255.255.255.0 would allow any device that shares the first three octets of the IP address to configure the AP. For example, if you enter an IP address of 10.20.30.1 with a 255.255.255.0 subnet mask, any IP address between 10.20.30.1 and 10.20.30.254 will have access to the AP's management interfaces.
- **Comment:** Enter an optional comment, such as the station name.

To edit or delete an entry, click **Edit**. Edit the information, or select **Enable**, **Disable**, or **Delete** from the **Status** pull-down menu.

## Services

You can configure the following management services:

### Secure Management

Secure Management allows the use of encrypted and authenticated communication protocols such as SNMPv3, Secure Socket Layer (SSL), and Secure Shell (SSH) to manage the Access Point.

- **Secure Management Status:** Enables the further configuration of HTTPS Access, SNMPv3, and Secure Shell (SSH). After enabling Secure Management, you can choose to configure HTTPS (SSL) and Secure Shell access on the Services tab, and to configure SNMPv3 passwords on the Passwords tab.

### SNMP Settings

- **SNMP Interface Bitmask:** Configure the interface or interfaces (**Ethernet, Wireless A, Wireless B, All Interfaces**) from which you will manage the AP via SNMP. You can also select **Disable** to prevent a user from accessing the AP via SNMP.

### HTTP Access

- **HTTP Interface Bitmap:** Configure the interface or interfaces (**Ethernet, Wireless A, Wireless B, All Interfaces**) from which you will manage the AP via the Web interface. For example, to allow Web configuration via the Ethernet network only, set **HTTP Interface Bitmap** to **Ethernet**. You can also select **Disabled** to prevent a user from accessing the AP from the Web interface.
- **HTTP Port:** Configure the HTTP port from which you will manage the AP via the Web interface. By default, the HTTP port is 80. You must reboot the Access Point if you change the HTTP Port.
- **HTTP Wizard Status:** The Setup Wizard appears automatically the first time you access the HTTP interface. If you exited out of the Setup Wizard and want to relaunch it, enable this option, click **OK**, and then close your browser or reboot the AP. The Setup Wizard will appear the next time you access the HTTP interface.

### HTTPS Access (Secure Socket Layer)

- **HTTPS (Secure Web Status):** The user can access the AP in a secure fashion using Secure Socket Layer (SSL) over port 443. The AP comes pre-installed with all required SSL files: default certificate and private key installed. Select **Enable** or **Disable** from the drop down menu to enable/disable SSL on the AP.
- **SSL Certificate Passphrase:** After enabling SSL, the only configurable parameter is the SSL passphrase. Enter the SSL Passphrase in the SSL Certificate Passphrase field.

The AP supports SSLv3 with a 128-bit encryption certificate maintained by the AP for secure communications between the AP and the HTTP client. All communications are encrypted using the server and the client-side certificate.

The user must change the SSL passphrase when uploading a new certificate/private key pair, which will have a corresponding passphrase.

#### **NOTE**

SSL requires Internet Explorer version 6, 128 bit encryption, Service Pack 1, and patch Q323308.

#### **NOTE**

You need to reboot the AP after enabling or disabling SSL for the changes to take effect.

### Accessing the AP through the HTTPS interface

The user should use a SSL intelligent browser to access the AP through the HTTPS interface. After configuring SSL, access the AP using **https://** followed by the AP's management IP address.

System
Network
Interfaces
Management
Filtering

Passwords
IP Access Table
Services
AutoConfig
CHRD

This tab is used to configure Secure Management, SHMP, Telnet (CLI), and HTTP (web) parameters.

Secure Management option allows the use of encrypted and authenticated communication protocols such as SHMPv3, and SSL to manage the Access Point. When Secure Management is turned on, the scope and access for the traditional non-secure means to manage the Access Point is automatically curtailed.

*Note: Changes to the parameters in this page except Radius Based Management Access Parameters and Secure Shell parameters (SSH Enable/Disable and SSH Key Status) require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

**Warning! Generation of SSH keys may take up to 3-4 minutes and the Access Point may not respond during that time.**

**SSH keys can be generated by setting the SSH Host Key Status to create or by enabling SSH when no keys are present .**

**If Secure Management is enabled when SSH is not enabled, the key generation will happen after the next reboot.**

Secure Management Status	Disable
SNMP Interface Bitmask	All Interfaces
HTTP Interface Bitmask	All Interfaces
HTTP Port	80
HTTP Wizard Status	Disable
HTTPS (Secure Web) Status	Disable
SSL Certificate Passphrase	*****
Telnet Interface Bitmask	All Interfaces
Telnet Port Number	23
Telnet Login Idle Timeout (seconds)	30
Telnet Session Idle Timeout (seconds)	900
SSH (Secure Shell) Status	Disable
SSH Host Key Status	Create
SSH Host Key FingerPrint	No Keys Present
Serial Baud Rate	9600
Serial Flow Control	None
Serial Data Bits	8
Serial Parity	None
Serial Stop Bits	1
HTTP RADIUS Access Control Status	Disable
Telnet RADIUS Access Control Status	Disable
Radius Profile for Management Access Control	Management Access
Local User Status	Disable
Local User Password (6-32 characters)	*****
Confirm Password	*****

OK
Cancel

Figure 4-16 Management Services Configuration Screen

## Telnet Configuration Settings

- **Telnet Interface Bitmask:** Select the interface (**Ethernet, Wireless A, Wireless B, All Interfaces**) from which you will manage the AP via telnet. This parameter can also be set to **Disable** to prevent telnet management.
- **Telnet Port Number:** The default port number for Telnet applications is 23. However, you can use this field if you want to change the Telnet port for security reasons (but your Telnet application also must support the new port number you select). You must reboot the Access Point if you change the Telnet Port.
- **Telnet Login Idle Timeout (seconds):** Enter the number of seconds the system will wait for a login attempt. The AP terminates the session when it times out. The range is 30 to 300 seconds; the default is 60 seconds.
- **Telnet Session Idle Timeout (seconds):** Enter the number of seconds the system will wait during a session while there is no activity. The AP will terminate the session on timeout. The range is 60 to 36000 seconds; the default is 900 seconds.

## Secure Shell (SSH) Settings

The AP supports SSH version 2, for secure remote CLI (Telnet) sessions. SSH provides strong authentication and encryption of session data.

The SSH server (AP) has **host keys** - a pair of asymmetric keys - a **private key** that resides on the AP and a **public key** that is distributed to clients that need to connect to the AP. As the client has knowledge of the server host keys, the client can verify that it is communicating with the correct SSH server. The client authentication is performed as follows:

- Using a username/password pair if RADIUS Based Management is enabled; otherwise using a password to authenticate the user over a secure channel created using SSH.

## SSH Session Setup

An SSH session is setup through the following process:

- The SSH server public key is transferred to the client using out-of-band or in-band mechanisms.
- The SSH client verifies the correctness of the server using the server's public key.
- The user/client authenticates to the server.
- An encrypted data session starts. The maximum number of SSH sessions is limited to two. If there is no activity for a specified amount of time (the Telnet Session Timeout parameter), the AP will timeout the connection.

## SSH Clients

The following SSH clients have been verified to interoperate with the AP's server. The following table lists the clients, version number, and the website of the client.

Clients	Version	Website
OpenSSH	V3.4-2	<a href="http://www.openssh.com">http://www.openssh.com</a>
Putty	Rel 0.53b	<a href="http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk">http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk</a>
Zoc	5.00	<a href="http://www.emtec.com">http://www.emtec.com</a>
Axessh	V2.5	<a href="http://www.labf.com">http://www.labf.com</a>

For key generation, OpenSSH client has been verified.

## Configuring SSH

Perform the following procedure to enable SSH and set the SSH host key:

1. Select Enable from the **SSH (Secure Shell) Status** drop-down box.

### NOTE

When Secure Management is enabled on the AP, SSH will be enabled by default and cannot be disabled.

2. Select the **SSH Host Key Status** from the drop-down menu.

Host keys must either be generated externally and uploaded to the AP (see [Uploading Externally Generated Host Keys](#)), generated manually, or auto-generated at the time of SSH initialization if SSH is enabled and no host keys are present. There is no key present in an AP that is in a factory default state.

To manually generate or delete host keys on the AP:

- Select **Create** to generate a new pair of host keys.
- Select **Delete** to remove the host keys from the AP. If no host keys are present, the AP will not allow connections using SSH. When host keys are created or deleted, the AP updates the fingerprint information displayed on the Management > Services page.



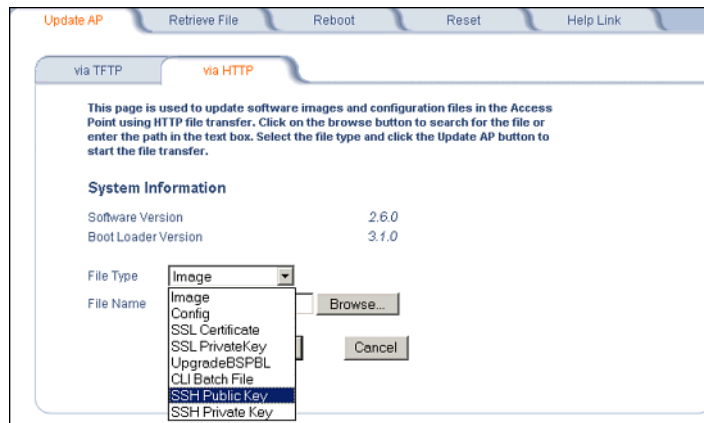
### WARNING

SSH Host key creation may take 3 to 4 minutes during which time the AP may not respond.

### Uploading Externally Generated Host Keys

Perform the following procedure to upload externally generated host keys to the AP. You must upload both the SSH public key and SSH private key for SSH to work.

1. Verify that the host keys have been externally generated. The OpenSSH client has been verified to interoperate with AP's SSH server.
2. Click **Commands > Update AP > via HTTP** (or via TFTP).



**Figure 4-17** Uploading an Externally Generated SSH Public Key and SSH Private Key

3. Select "SSH Public Key" from the File Type drop-down menu.
  4. Click **Browse**, select the SSH Public Key file on your local machine.
  5. Click **Open**.
  6. To initiate the file transfer, click the **Update AP** button.
  7. Select "SSH Private Key" from the **File Type** drop-down menu.
  8. Click **Browse**, select the SSH Private Key on your local machine.
  9. Click **Open**.
  10. To initiate the file transfer, click the **Update AP** button.
- The fingerprint of the new SSH public key will be displayed in the **Management > Services** page.

## Serial Configuration Settings

The serial port interface on the AP is enabled at all times. See [Setting IP Address using Serial Port](#) for information on how to access the CLI interface via the serial port. You can configure and view the following parameters:

- **Serial Baud Rate:** Select the serial port speed (bits per second). Choose between 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, or 57600; the default Baud Rate is 9600.
- **Serial Flow Control:** Select either **None** (default) or **Xon/Xoff** (software controlled) data flow control.

### ⇒ NOTE

To avoid potential problems when communicating with the AP through the serial port, SYSTIMAX recommends that you leave the Flow Control setting at None (the default value).

- **Serial Data Bits:** This is a read-only field and displays the number of data bits used in serial communication (8 data bits by default).
- **Serial Parity:** This is a read-only field and displays the number of parity bits used in serial communication (no parity bits by default).
- **Serial Stop Bits:** This is a read-only field that displays the number of stop bits used in serial communication (1 stop bit by default).

### ⇒ NOTE

The serial port bit configuration is commonly referred to as **8N1**.

## RADIUS Based Management Access

User management of APs can be centralized by using a RADIUS server to store user credentials. The AP cross-checks credentials using RADIUS protocol and the RADIUS server accepts or rejects the user.

HTTP/HTTPS and Telnet/SSH users can be managed with RADIUS. Serial CLI and SNMP cannot be managed by RADIUS. Two types of users can be supported using centralized RADIUS management:

- **Super User:** The super user has access to all functionality of a management interface. A super user is configured in the RADIUS server by setting the filter ID attribute (returned in the RADIUS Accept packet) for the user to a value of "super user" (not case sensitive). A user is considered a super user if the value of the **filter-id** attribute returned in the RADIUS Accept packet for the user is "super user" (not case sensitive).
- **Limited User:** A limited user has access to only a limited set of functionality on a management interface. All users who are not super users are considered limited users. However, a limited user is configured in the RADIUS server by setting the **filter-id** attribute (returned in the RADIUS Accept packet) to "limited user" (not case sensitive). Limited users do not have access to the following configuration capabilities:
  - Update/retrieve files to and from APs
  - Reset the AP to factory defaults
  - Reboot the AP
  - Change management properties related to RADIUS, management modes, and management passwords.

When RADIUS Based Management is enabled, a **local user** can be configured to provide Telnet, SSH, and HTTP(S) access to the AP when RADIUS servers fail. The local user has super user capabilities. When secure management is enabled, the local user can only login using secure means (i.e., SSH or SSL). When the local user option is disabled the only access to the AP when RADIUS servers are down will be through serial CLI or SNMP.

The Radius Based Management Access parameters allows you to enable HTTP or Telnet Radius Management Access, to configure a RADIUS Profile for management access control, and to enable or disable local user access, and configure the local user password. You can configure and view the following parameters:

- **HTTP RADIUS Access Control Status:** Enable RADIUS management of HTTP/HTTPS users.
- **Telnet RADIUS Access Control Status:** Enable RADIUS management of Telnet/SSH users.
- **RADIUS Profile for Management Access Control:** Specifies the RADIUS Profile to be used for RADIUS Based Management Access.
- **Local User Status:** Enables or disables the local user when RADIUS Based Management is enabled. The default local user ID is root.
- **Local User Password and Confirm Password:** The default local user password is public. "Root" cannot be configured as a valid user for Radius based management access when local user access is enabled.



## Automatic Configuration (AutoConfig)

The Automatic Configuration feature allows an AP to be automatically configured by downloading a specific configuration file from a TFTP server during the boot up process.

Automatic Configuration is disabled by default. The configuration process for Automatic Configuration varies depending on whether the AP is configured for dynamic or static IP.

When an AP is configured for dynamic IP, the Configuration filename and the TFTP server IP address are contained in the DHCP response when the AP gets its IP address dynamically from the DHCP server. When configured for static IP, these parameters are instead configured in the AP interface.

After setting up automatic configuration you must reboot the AP. When the AP reboots it receives the new configuration information and must reboot one additional time. If Syslog is configured, a Syslog message will appear indicating the success or failure of the Automatic Configuration.

## Auto Configuration and the CLI Batch File

The Auto Configuration feature allows download of the LTV (Length, Type, Value) format configuration file or the CLI Batch file. The LTV file contains parameters used by the AP; the CLI Batch file contains CLI executable commands used to set AP parameters. The AP detects whether the uploaded file is LTV format or a CLI Batch file. If the AP detects an LTV file, it stores the file in the AP's flash memory. If the AP detects a CLI Batch file (a file with an extension of .cli), the AP executes the commands contained in the file immediately.

The AP will reboot after executing the CLI Batch file. Auto Configuration will not result in repeated reboots if the CLI Batch file contains rebootable parameters.

For more information, refer to [CLI Batch File](#).

## Configuring Automatic Configuration for Static IP

Perform the following procedure to enable and set up Automatic Configuration when you have a static IP address for the TFTP server.

1. Click **Configure > Management > AutoConfig**.  
The [Automatic Configuration Screen](#) appears.
2. Check **Enable Auto Configuration**.
3. Enter the **Configuration Filename**.
4. Enter the IP address of the TFTP server in the **TFTP Server Address** field.

### NOTE

The default filename is "config". The default TFTP IP address is "169.254.128.133" for the AirSPEED AP542.

5. Click **OK** to save the changes.
6. Reboot the AP. When the AP reboots it receives the new configuration information and must reboot one additional time. If a Syslog server was configured, the following messages can be observed on the Syslog server:
  - AutoConfig for Static IP
  - TFTP server address and configuration filename
  - AutoConfig Successful

System Network Interfaces **Management** Filtering

Passwords IP Access Table Services **AutoConfig** CHR

This tab is used to enable auto configuration and also to configure TFTP server IP address and configuration filename.

*Note: The configuration filename and TFTP server IP address specified here are used only when the AP is configured for STATIC IP. If the AP is configured for Dynamic IP these parameters are not used and obtained from DHCP.*

*Note: For using a CLI batch file with auto configuration, give a ".cli" extension for the filename that is stored in the TFTP server.*

Enable Auto Configuration

---

Configuration Filename

TFTP Server Address

OK Cancel

Figure 4-18 Automatic Configuration Screen

### Configuring Automatic Configuration for Dynamic IP

Perform the following procedure to enable and set up Automatic Configuration when you have a dynamic IP address for the TFTP server via DHCP.

The Configuration filename and the TFTP server IP address are contained in the DHCP response when the AP gets its IP address dynamically from the DHCP server. A Syslog server address is also contained in the DHCP response, allowing the AP to send Auto Configuration success and failure messages to a Syslog server.

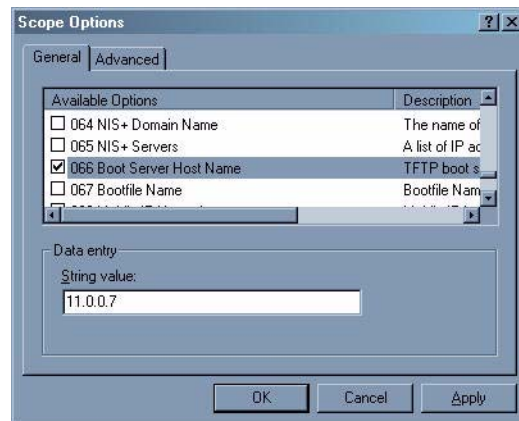
#### ➤ NOTE

The configuration filename and TFTP server IP address are configured only when the AP is configured for Static IP. If the AP is configured for Dynamic IP these parameters are not used and obtained from DHCP.

1. Click **Configure > Management > AutoConfig**.  
The [Automatic Configuration Screen](#) appears.
2. Check **Enable Auto Configuration**.

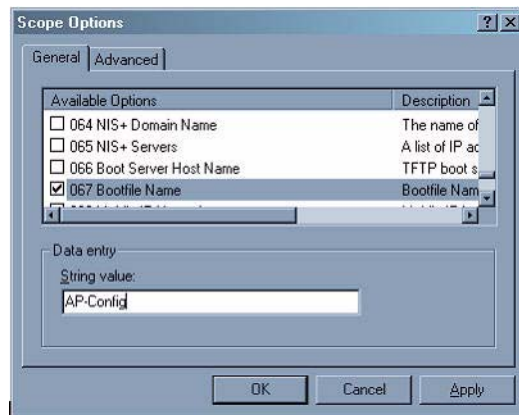
When the AP is Configured with Dynamic IP, the DHCP server should be configured with the TFTP Server IP address ("Boot Server Host Name", option 66) and Configuration file ("Bootfile name", option 67) as follows (note that this example uses a Windows 2000 server):

3. **Select DHCP Server > DHCP Option > Scope**.  
The **DHCP Options: Scope** screen appears.



**Figure 4-19 DHCP Options: Setting the Boot Server Host Name**

4. Add the **Boot Server Host Name** and **Boot Filename** parameters to the Active Options list.
5. Set the value of the **Boot Server Host Name** parameter to the host name or IP Address of the TFTP server. For example: 11.0.0.7.
6. Set the value of the **Bootfile Name** parameter to the Configuration filename (for example: AP-Config).



**Figure 4-20 DHCP Options: Setting the Boot File Name**

7. If using Syslog, set the Log server IP address (option 7, Log Servers).
8. Reboot the AP. When the AP reboots it receives the new configuration information and must reboot one additional time. If a Syslog server was configured, the following messages can be observed on the Syslog server:
  - AutoConfig for Dynamic IP
  - TFTP server address and configuration filename
  - AutoConfig Successful

## Hardware Configuration Reset (CHRD)

Hardware Configuration Reset Status is a parameter that defines the hardware configuration reset behavior of the AP (i.e., what effect pressing the reload button has on an AP operating in normal operating mode).

If a user loses or forgets the AP's HTTP/Telnet/SNMP password, the reset button on the AP provides a way to reset the AP to default configuration values to gain access to the AP. However, in AP deployments where physical access to the AP is not protected, an unauthorized person could reset the AP to factory defaults and thus gain control of the AP. The user can disable the hardware configuration reset functionality to prevent unauthorized access.

The hardware configuration reset feature operates as follows:

- When hardware configuration reset is enabled, the user can press the hardware reload button for 10 seconds when the AP is in normal operational mode in order to delete the AP configuration.
- When hardware configuration reset is disabled, pressing the reload button when the AP is in normal operational mode does not have any effect on the AP.
- The hardware configuration reset parameter does not have any effect on the functionality of the reload button to delete the AP image during AP boot loaded execution.
- The default hardware configuration reset status is enabled. When disabling hardware configuration reset, the user is recommended to configure a configuration reset password. A configuration reset option appears on the serial port during boot up, before the AP reads its configuration and initializes.
- Whenever the AP is reset to factory default configuration, hardware configuration reset status is enabled and the configuration reset password is set to the default, "public".
- If secure mode is enabled in the AP, only secure (SSL, SNMPv3, SSH) users can modify the values of the Hardware Configuration Reset Status and the configuration reset password.

## Configuration Reset via Serial Port During Bootup

If hardware configuration reset is disabled, the user gets prompted by a configuration reset option to reset the AP to factory defaults during boot up from the serial interface. By pressing a key sequence (ctrl-R), the user gets prompted to enter a configuration reset password before the configuration is reset.

### NOTE

It is important to safely store the configuration reset password. If a user forgets the configuration reset password, the user will be unable to reset the AP to factory default configuration if the AP becomes inaccessible and the hardware configuration reset functionality is disabled.

## Configuring Hardware Configuration Reset

Perform the following procedure to configure Hardware Configuration Reset and to set the Configuration Reset Password.

1. Click **Configure > Management > CHR.D**.

The hardware configuration Reset functionality allows the user to reset the AP to factory defaults configuration by pressing the hardware reload button when the AP is in operational mode. This is useful in gaining access to the AP if the user forgets the HTTP/Telnet/SNMP password.

*Note: If the Hardware Configuration Reset is disabled, the user shall be prompted for the configuration reset password during boot up to reset the AP to factory defaults from the serial interface. It is important to store this password safely. The AP cannot be restored to defaults from the boot time serial interface, if this password is lost.*

Enable Hardware Configuration Reset

Configuration Reset Password: [password field] Confirm: [password field]

OK Cancel

**Figure 4-21 Hardware Configuration Reset**

2. Check (enable) or uncheck (disable) the **Enable Hardware Configuration Reset** checkbox.
3. Change the default Configuration Reset Password in the “Configuration Reset Password” and “Confirm” fields.

### NOTE

It is important to safely store the configuration reset password. If a user forgets the configuration reset password, the user will be unable to reset the AP to factory default configuration if the AP becomes inaccessible and the hardware configuration reset functionality is disabled.

## Procedure to Reset Configuration via the Serial Interface

1. During boot up, observe the message output on the serial interface.  
The AP prompts the user with the message: “Press ctrl-R in 3 seconds to choose configuration reset option.”
2. Enter ctrl-R within 3 seconds after being prompted.  
The AP prompts the user with “Press ctrl-Z to continue with normal boot up or enter password to reset configuration.” If the user enters ctrl-Z, the AP continues to boot with the stored configuration.
3. Enter the configuration reset password. The default configuration reset password is “public”.  
When the correct configuration reset password is entered, the AP gets reset to factory defaults and displays the message “AP has been reset to Factory Default Settings.” The AP continues to boot up. If an incorrect configuration reset password is entered, the AP shows an error message and reprompts the user. If the incorrect password is entered three times in a row, the AP proceeds to boot up.

## Filtering

The Access Point's Packet Filtering features help control the amount of traffic exchanged between the wired and wireless networks. The Filtering tab contains the following sub-tabs:

- [Ethernet Protocol](#)
- [Static MAC](#)
- [Advanced](#)
- [TCP/UDP Port](#)

### Ethernet Protocol

The Ethernet Protocol Filter blocks or forwards packets based on the Ethernet protocols they support.

Follow these steps to configure the Ethernet Protocol Filter:

1. Select the interface or interfaces that will implement the filter from the **Ethernet Protocol Filtering** drop-down menu.
  - **Ethernet:** Packets are examined at the Ethernet interface
  - **Wireless A or Wireless B:** Packets are examined at the Wireless A or B interfaces
  - **All Interfaces:** Packets are examined at both interfaces
  - **Disabled:** The filter is not used
2. Select the **Filter Operation Type**.
  - If set to **Passthru**, only the enabled Ethernet Protocols listed in the Filter Table will pass through the bridge.
  - If set to **Block**, the bridge will block enabled Ethernet Protocols listed in the Filter Table.
3. Configure the **Ethernet Protocol Filter Table**. This table is pre-populated with existing Ethernet Protocol Filters, however, you may enter additional filters by specifying the appropriate parameters.
  - To add an entry, click **Add**, and then specify the **Protocol Number** and a **Protocol Name**.
    - **Protocol Number:** Enter the protocol number. See <http://www.iana.org/assignments/ethernet-numbers> for a list of protocol numbers.
    - **Protocol Name:** Enter related information, typically the protocol name.
  - To edit or delete an entry, click **Edit** and change the information, or select **Enable**, **Disable**, or **Delete** from the **Status** drop-down menu.
  - An entry's status must be enabled in order for the protocol to be subject to the filter.

## Static MAC

The Static MAC Address filter optimizes the performance of a wireless (and wired) network. When this feature is properly configured, the AP can block traffic between wired devices and wireless devices based on MAC address.

For example, you can set up a Static MAC filter to prevent wireless clients from communicating with a specific server on the Ethernet network. You can also use this filter to block unnecessary multicast packets from being forwarded to the wireless network.

### NOTE

The Static MAC Filter is an advanced feature. You may find it easier to control wireless traffic via other filtering options, such as Ethernet Protocol Filtering.

Each static MAC entry contains the following fields:

- **Wired MAC Address**
- **Wired Mask**
- **Wireless MAC Address**
- **Wireless Mask**
- **Comment:** This field is optional.

Each MAC Address or Mask is comprised of 12 hexadecimal digits (0-9, A-F) that correspond to a 48-bit identifier. (Each hexadecimal digit represents 4 bits (0 or 1).)

Taken together, a MAC Address/Mask pair specifies an address or a range of MAC addresses that the AP will look for when examining packets. The AP uses Boolean logic to perform an “AND” operation between the MAC Address and the Mask at the bit level. However, for most users, you do not need to think in terms of bits. It should be sufficient to create a filter using only the hexadecimal digits 0 and F in the Mask (where 0 is any value and F is the value specified in the MAC address). A Mask of 00:00:00:00:00:00 corresponds to all MAC addresses, and a Mask of FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF applies only to the specified MAC Address.

For example, if the MAC Address is 00:20:A6:12:54:C3 and the Mask is FF:FF:FF:00:00:00, the AP will examine the source and destination addresses of each packet looking for any MAC address starting with 00:20:A6. If the Mask is FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF, the AP will only look for the specific MAC address (in this case, 00:20:A6:12:54:C3).

When creating a filter, you can configure the Wired parameters only, the Wireless parameters only, or both sets of parameters. Which parameters to configure depends upon the traffic that you want block:

- To prevent all traffic from a specific wired MAC address from being forwarded to the wireless network, configure only the Wired MAC Address and Wired Mask (leave the Wireless MAC Address and Wireless Mask set to all zeros).
- To prevent all traffic from a specific wireless MAC address from being forwarded to the wired network, configure only the Wireless MAC address and Wireless Mask (leave the Wired MAC Address and Wired Mask set to all zeros).
- To block traffic between a specific wired MAC address and a specific wireless MAC address, configure all four parameters.

To create an entry, click **Add** and enter the appropriate MAC addresses and Masks to setup a filter. The entry is enabled automatically when saved. To edit an entry, click **Edit**. To disable or remove an entry, click **Edit** and change the **Status** field from **Enable** to **Disable** or **Delete**.

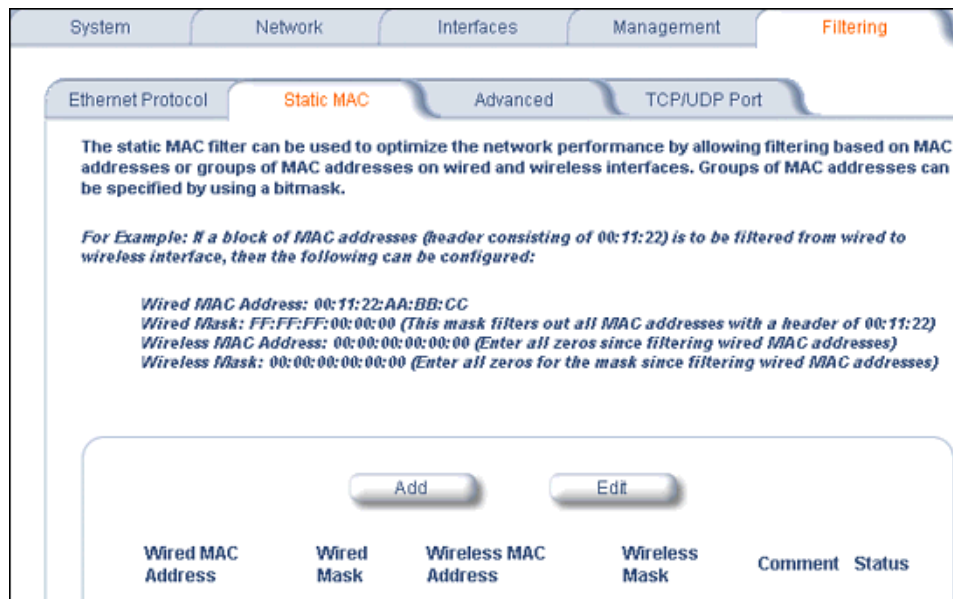


Figure 4-22 Static MAC Configuration Screen

### Static MAC Filter Examples

Consider a network that contains a wired server and three wireless clients. The MAC address for each unit is as follows:

- Wired Server: 00:40:F4:1C:DB:6A
- Wireless Client 1: 00:02:2D:51:94:E4
- Wireless Client 2: 00:02:2D:51:32:12
- Wireless Client 3: 00:20:A6:12:4E:38

#### Prevent Two Specific Devices from Communicating

Configure the following settings to prevent the Wired Server and Wireless Client 1 from communicating:

- **Wired MAC Address:** 00:40:F4:1C:DB:6A
- **Wired Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF
- **Wireless MAC Address:** 00:02:2D:51:94:E4
- **Wireless Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF

Result: Traffic between the Wired Server and Wireless Client 1 is blocked. Wireless Clients 2 and 3 can still communicate with the Wired Server.

#### Prevent Multiple Wireless Devices From Communicating With a Single Wired Device

Configure the following settings to prevent Wireless Clients 1 and 2 from communicating with the Wired Server:

- **Wired MAC Address:** 00:40:F4:1C:DB:6A
- **Wired Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF
- **Wireless MAC Address:** 00:02:2D:51:94:E4
- **Wireless Mask:** FF:FF:FF:00:00:00

Result: When a logical “AND” is performed on the Wireless MAC Address and Wireless Mask, the result corresponds to any MAC address beginning with the 00:20:2D prefix. Since Wireless Client 1 and Wireless Client 2 share the same prefix (00:02:2D), traffic between the Wired Server and Wireless Clients 1 and 2 is blocked. Wireless Client 3 can still communicate with the Wired Server since it has a different prefix (00:20:A6).



### Prevent All Wireless Devices From Communicating With a Single Wired Device

Configure the following settings to prevent all three Wireless Clients from communicating with Wired Server 1:

- **Wired MAC Address:** 00:40:F4:1C:DB:6A
- **Wired Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF
- **Wireless MAC Address:** 00:00:00:00:00:00
- **Wireless Mask:** 00:00:00:00:00:00

Result: The Access Point blocks all traffic between Wired Server 1 and all wireless clients.

### Prevent Wireless Device from Communicating with Wired Network

Configure the following settings to prevent Wireless Client 3 from communicating with any device on the Ethernet:

- **Wired MAC Address:** 00:00:00:00:00:00
- **Wired Mask:** 00:00:00:00:00:00
- **Wireless MAC Address:** 00:20:A6:12:4E:38
- **Wireless Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF

Result: The Access Point blocks all traffic between Wireless Client 3 and the Ethernet network.

### Prevent Messages Destined for a Specific Multicast Group from Being Forwarded to the Wireless LAN

If there are devices on your Ethernet network that use multicast packets to communicate and these packets are not required by your wireless clients, you can set up a Static MAC filter to preserve wireless bandwidth. For example, if routers on your network use a specific multicast address (such as 01:00:5E:00:32:4B) to exchange information, you can set up a filter to prevent these multicast packets from being forwarded to the wireless network. Configure the following settings to prevent the AP from forwarding packets for a specific multicast group to the wireless LAN:

- **Wired MAC Address:** 01:00:5E:00:32:4B
- **Wired Mask:** FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF
- **Wireless MAC Address:** 00:00:00:00:00:00
- **Wireless Mask:** 00:00:00:00:00:00

Result: The Access Point does not forward any packets that have a destination address of 01:00:5E:00:32:4B to the wireless network.

## Advanced

You can configure the following advanced filtering options:

- **Enable Proxy ARP:** Place a check mark in the box provided to allow the Access Point to respond to Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests for wireless clients. When enabled, the AP answers ARP requests for wireless stations without actually forwarding them to the wireless network. If disabled, the Access Point will bridge ARP requests for wireless clients to the wireless LAN.
- **Enable IP/ARP Filtering:** Place a check mark in the box provided to allow IP/ARP filtering based on the IP/ARP Filtering Address and IP Mask. Leave the box unchecked to prevent filtering. If enabled, you should also configure the IP/ARP Filtering Address and IP/ARP IP Mask.
  - **IP/ARP Filtering Address:** Enter the Network filtering IP Address.
  - **IP/ARP IP Mask:** Enter the Network Mask IP Address.

The following protocols are listed in the Advanced Filter Table:

- **Deny IPX RIP**
- **Deny IPX SAP**
- **Deny IPX LSP**
- **Deny IP Broadcasts**
- **Deny IP Multicasts**

The AP can filter these protocols in the wireless-to-Ethernet direction, the Ethernet-to-wireless direction, or in both directions. Click **Edit** and use the **Status** field to Enable or Disable the filter.

## TCP/UDP Port

Port-based filtering enables you to control wireless user access to network services by selectively blocking TCP/UDP protocols through the AP. A user specifies a Protocol Name, Port Number, Port Type (TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP), and filtering interfaces (Wireless only, Ethernet only, all interfaces, or no interfaces) in order to block access to services, such as Telnet and FTP, and traffic, such as NETBIOS and HTTP.

For example, an AP with the following configuration would discard frames received on its Ethernet interface with a UDP destination port number of 137, effectively blocking NETBIOS Name Service packets.

Protocol Type (TCP/UDP)	Destination Port Number	Protocol Name	Interface	Status (Enable/Disable)
UDP	137	NETBIOS Name Service	Ethernet	Enable

## Adding TCP/UDP Port Filters

1. Place a check mark in the box labeled **Enable TCP/UDP Port Filtering**.
2. Click **Add** under the **TCP/UDP Port Filter Table** heading.
3. In the **TCP/UDP Port Filter Table**, enter the Protocol Names to filter.
4. Set the destination Port Number (a value between 1 and 65535) to filter. See the IANA Web site at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/port-numbers> for a list of assigned port numbers and their descriptions.
5. Set the Port Type for the protocol: **TCP**, **UDP**, or both (**TCP/UDP**).
6. Set the **Interface** to filter:
  - Ethernet
  - Wireless A
  - Ethernet and Wireless A
  - Wireless B
  - Ethernet and Wireless B
  - Wireless A and B
  - All interfaces
7. Click **OK**.

## Editing TCP/UDP Port Filters

1. Click **Edit** under the **TCP/UDP Port Filter Table** heading.
2. Make any changes to the Protocol Name or Port Number for a specific entry, if necessary.
3. In the row that defines the port, set the **Status** to **Enable**, **Disable**, or **Delete**, as appropriate.
4. Select **OK**.

## Alarms

This tab has four sub-tabs.

- [Groups](#)
- [Alarm Host Table](#)
- [Syslog](#)
- [Rogue Scan](#)

## Groups

There are seven alarm groups that can be enabled or disabled via the Web interface. Place a check mark in the box provided to enable a specific group. Remove the check mark from the box to disable the alarms. Alarm [Severity Levels](#) vary.

## Severity Levels

There are three severity levels for system alarms:

- Critical
- Major
- Informational

Critical alarms will often result in severe disruption in network activity or an automatic reboot of the AP.

Major alarms are usually activated due to a breach in the security of the system. Clients cannot be authenticated because an attempt at unauthorized access into the AP has been detected.

Informational alarms are there to provide the network administrator with some general information about the activities the AP is performing.

- **Configuration Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
DNS IP Address not Configured	oriTrapDNSIPNotConfigured	Major
RADIUS Authentication not Configured	oriTrapRADIUSAuthenticationNotConfigured	Major
RADIUS Accounting not Configured	oriTrapRADIUSAccountingNotConfigured	Major
Duplicate IP Address Encountered	oriTrapDuplicateIPAddressEncountered	Major
DHCP Relay Server Table Not Configured	oriTrapDHCPRelayServerTableNotConfigured	Major
VLAN ID Invalid Configuration	oriTrapVLANIDInvalidConfiguration	Major
Auto Configuration Failure	oriTrapAutoConfigFailure	Minor
CLI Configuration Execution Failure	oriTrapBatchExecFailure	Minor
CLI Configuration Execution Start	oriTrapBatchFileExecStart	Minor
CLI Configuration Execution End	oriTrapBatchFileExecEnd	Minor

- **Security Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Authentication Failure	oriTrapAuthenticationFailure	Major
Unauthorized Manager Detected	oriTrapUnauthorizedManagerDetected	Major
RAD Scan Complete	oriTrapRADScanComplete	Informational
RAD Scan Results	oriTrapRADScanResults	Informational

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Rogue Scan Station Detected	oriTrapRogueScanStationDetected	Informational
Rogue Scan Cycle Complete	oriTrapRogueScanCycleComplete	Informational
MIC Attack Detected	Supported in web interface only	Major
MIC Attack Report Detected	Supported in web interface only	Major

- **Wireless Interface/Card Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Wireless Card Failure	oriTrapWLCFailure	Critical
Radar Interference Detected	oriTrapWLCRadarInterferenceDetected	Major

- **Operational Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Unrecoverable Software Error Detected	oriTrapUnrecoverableSoftwareErrorDetected	Critical
RADIUS Server Not Responding	oriTrapRADIUSServerNotResponding	Major
Module Not Initialized	oriTrapModuleNotInitialized	Major
Device Rebooting	oriTrapDeviceRebooting	Informational
Task Suspended	oriTrapTaskSuspended	Critical
BootP Failed	oriTrapBootPFailed	Major
DHCP Client Failed	oriTrapDHCPFailed	Major
DNS Client Lookup Failure	oriTrapDNSClientLookupFailure	Major
SSL Initialization Failure	oriTrapSSLInitializationFailure	Major
Wireless Service Shutdown	oriTrapWirelessServiceShutdown	Informational
Wireless Service Resumed	oriTrapWirelessServiceResumed	Informational
SSH Initialization Status	oriTrapSSHInitializationStatus	Major
Assigned User VLAN ID	oriTrapVLANIDUserAssignment	Informational
DHCP Lease Renewal	oriTrapDHCPLeaseRenewal	Informational

- **Flash Memory Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Flash Memory Empty	oriTrapFlashMemoryEmpty	Informational
Flash Memory Corrupted	oriTrapFlashMemoryCorrupted	Critical
Restoring Last Known Good Configuration File	oriTrapFlashMemoryRestoringLastKnownGoodConfiguration	Informational

- **TFTP Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
TFTP Operation Failure	oriTrapTFTPFailedOperation	Major
TFTP Operation Initiated	oriTrapTFTPOperationInitiated	Informational
TFTP Operation Completed	oriTrapTFTPOperationCompleted	Informational

- **Image Trap Group**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
Zero Size Image	oriTrapZeroSizeImage	Major
Invalid Image	oriTrapInvalidImage	Major
Image Too Large	oriTrapImageTooLarge	Major
Incompatible Image	oriTrapIncompatibleImage	Major
Invalid Image Digital Signature	oriTrapInvalidImageDigitalSignature	Major

In addition, the AP supports these standard traps, which are always enabled:

- **RFC 1215-Trap**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
coldStart	The AP has been turned on or rebooted.	Informational
linkUp	The AP's Ethernet interface link is up (working).	Informational
linkDown	The AP's Ethernet interface link is down (not working).	Informational

- **Bridge MIB (RFC 1493) Alarms**

Trap Name	Description	Severity Level
newRoot	This trap indicates that the AP has become the new root in the Spanning Tree network.	Informational
topologyChange	This trap is sent by the AP when any of its configured ports transitions from the Learning state to the Forwarding state, or from the Forwarding state to the Blocking state. This trap is not sent if a newRoot trap is sent for the same transition.	Informational

All these alarm groups correspond to System Alarms that are displayed in the [System Status Screen](#), including the traps that are sent by the AP to the SNMP managers specified in the [Alarm Host Table](#).

## Alarm Host Table

To add an entry and enable the AP to send SNMP trap messages to a Trap Host, click **Add**, and then specify the IP Address and Password for the Trap Host.

### NOTE

Up to 10 entries are possible in the Alarm Host table.

- **IP Address:** Enter the Trap Host IP Address.
- **Password:** Enter the password in the **Password** field and the **Confirm** field.
- **Comment:** Enter an optional comment, such as the alarm (trap) host station name.

To edit or delete an entry, click **Edit**. Edit the information, or select **Enable**, **Disable**, or **Delete** from the **Status** drop-down menu.

## Syslog

The Syslog messaging system enables the AP to transmit event messages to a central server for monitoring and troubleshooting. The Access Point logs “Session Start (Log-in)” and “Session Stop (Log-out)” events for each wireless client as an alternative to RADIUS accounting.

See RFC 3164 at <http://www.rfc-editor.org> for more information on the Syslog standard.

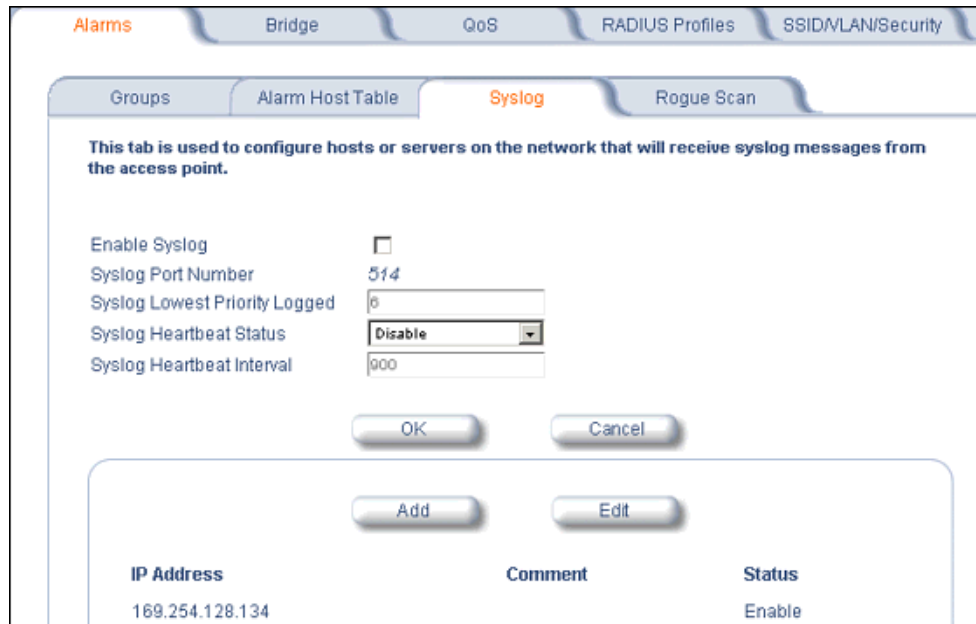


Figure 4-23 Syslog Configuration Screen

## Setting Syslog Event Notifications

Syslog Events are logged according to the level of detail specified by the administrator. Logging only urgent system messages will create a far smaller, more easily read log than a log of every event the system encounters. Determine which events to log by selecting a priority defined by the following scale:

Event	Priority	Description
LOG_EMERG	0	system is unusable
LOG_ALERT	1	action must be taken immediately
LOG_CRIT	2	critical conditions
LOG_ERR	3	error conditions
LOG_WARNING	4	warning conditions
LOG_NOTICE	5	normal but significant condition
LOG_INFO	6	informational
LOG_DEBUG	7	debug-level messages

## Configuring Syslog Event Notifications

You can configure the following Syslog settings from the HTTP interface:

- **Enable Syslog:** Place a check mark in the box provided to enable system logging.
- **Syslog Port Number:** This field is read-only and displays the port number (514) assigned for system logging.
- **Syslog Lowest Priority Logged:** The AP will send event messages to the Syslog server that correspond to the selected priority and above. For example, if set to 6, the AP will transmit event messages labeled priority 0 to 6 to the Syslog server. This parameter supports a range between 1 and 7; 6 is the default.

- **Syslog Heartbeat Status:** When Heartbeat is enabled, the AP periodically sends a message to the Syslog server to indicate that it is active.
- **Syslog Heartbeat Interval:** If Syslog Heartbeat Status is enabled this field provides the interval for the heartbeat in seconds. The default is 900 seconds.
- **Syslog Host Table:** This table specifies the IP addresses of a network servers that the AP will send Syslog messages to. Click **Add** to create a new entry. Click **Edit** to change an existing entry. Each entry contains the following field:
  - **IP Address:** Enter the IP Address for the management host.
  - **Comment:** Enter an optional comment such as the host name.
  - **Status:** The entry is enabled automatically when saved (so the Status field is only visible when editing an entry). You can also disable or delete entries by changing this field's value.

## Syslog Messages

The following messages are supported in the AP:

Message	Severity
Auto Configuration via DHCP	Informational
Auto Configuration for static IP	Informational
TFTP server IP/Config filename missing in DHCP response	Minor
AutoConfig TFTP server IP address used is <IP address>	Informational
AutoConfig filename used is <filename>	Informational
AutoConfig TFTP download failed	Minor
Image Error check, invalid image	Minor
AP Heartbeat status	Minor
Client Authentication State	Informational
Accounting	Informational
RADIUS Responses	Informational
MIC Attack Detected	Major
MIC Attack Report Detected	Major



## Rogue Scan

The Rogue Scan feature provides an additional security level for wireless LAN deployments. Rogue Scan uses the selected wireless interface(s) for scanning its coverage area for Access Points and clients.

A centralized *Network Manager* receives MAC address information from the AP on all wireless clients detected by the AP. The Network Manager then queries all wired switches to find out the inbound switch/port of these wireless clients. If the switch/port does not have a valid Access Point connected to it as per a pre-configured database, the Network Manager proceeds to block that switch/port and prevent the Rogue AP from connecting to the wired network.

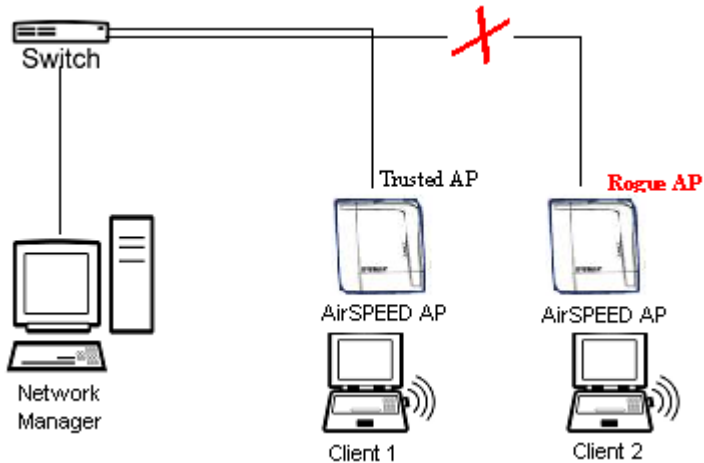


Figure 4-24 Preventing Rogue AP Attacks

The figure above shows Client 1 connected to a Trusted AP and Client 2 connected to a Rogue AP. The Trusted AP scans the networks, detects Client 2, and notifies the Network Manager. The Network Manager uses SNMP/CLI to query the wired switch to find the inbound switch port of Client 2's packets. The Network Manager verifies that this switch/router and port does not have a valid Access Point as per the administrator's database. Thus it labels Client 2's AP as a Rogue AP and proceeds to prevent the Rogue AP attack by blocking this switch's port.

## Multi-Band Scanning

Rogue Scan detects Rogue stations in all bands (i.e., 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz for interfaces that support 802.11a and 802.11g multi-band operation). During Rogue Scan the AP scans every channel in its configured regulatory domain; the AP scans both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands for wireless interfaces supporting 802.11a and 802.11g multi-band operation.

APs can be detected either by active scanning using 802.11 probe request frames and passively by detecting periodic beacons. Wireless clients are detected by monitoring 802.11 connection establishment messages such as association/authentication messages or data traffic to or from the wireless clients.

There are two scanning modes available per wireless interface: continuous scanning mode and background scanning mode.

## Continuous Scanning Mode

The continuous scanning mode is a dedicated scanning mode where the wireless interface performs scanning alone and does not perform the normal AP operation of servicing client traffic.

In continuous scanning mode the AP scans each channel for a channel scan time of one second and then moves to the next channel in the scan channel list. With a channel scan time of one second, the scan cycle time will take less than a minute (one second per channel). Once the entire scan channel list has been scanned the AP restarts scanning from the beginning of the scan channel list.

## Background Scanning Mode

In background scanning mode the AP performs background scanning while performing normal AP operations on the wireless interface.

You can configure the **scan cycle time** between 1-1440 minutes (24 hours). The scan cycle time indicates how frequently a channel is sampled and defines the minimum attack period that can go unnoticed.

In background scanning mode the AP will scan one channel then wait for a time known as channel scan time. The channel scan time affects the amount of data collected during scanning and defines the maximum number of samples (possible detections) in one scan. This is increased to improve scanning efficiency; the tradeoff is that it decreases throughput. The optimum value for this parameter during background scanning mode is 20ms. The channel scan time is calculated from the scan cycle time parameter and the number of channels in the scan channel list as follows:

$$\text{channel scan time} = (\text{scan cycle time} - (\text{channel scan time} * \text{number of channels in the scan list})) / \text{number of channels in the scan list}.$$

## Rogue Scan Data Collection

The AP stores information gathered about detected stations during scanning in a Rogue Scan result table. The Rogue Scan result table can store a maximum of 2000 entries. When the table fills, the oldest entry gets overwritten. The Rogue Scan result table lists the following information about each detected station:

- Station Type: indicates one of the following types of station:
  - Unknown station
  - AP station
  - Infrastructure Client Station
  - IBSS Client Station
- MAC Address of the detected station
- Channel: the working channel of the detected station
- SNR: the SNR value of the last frame from the station as received by the AP
- BSSID: the BSSID field stores the:
  - MAC address of the associated Access Point in the case of a client.
  - Zero MAC address or MAC address of the partner Access Point if the AP is a partner of a WDS link

The AP ages out older entries in the Rogue Scan result table if a detected station is inactive for more than the Scan Result Table Ageing Time.

## Rogue Scan

Perform this procedure to enable Rogue Scan on a particular interface or interfaces and define the Scan Interval and Scan Interface.

The **Rogue Scan** screen also displays the number of new Access Points and clients detected in the last scan on each wireless interface.

1. Enable the Security Alarm Group. Select the Security Alarm Group link from the **Rogue Scan** screen. Configure a Trap Host to receive the list of Access Points (and clients) detected during the scan.
2. Click **Configure > Alarms > Rogue Scan**.
3. Enable Rogue Scan on a wireless interface by checking **Enable Rogue Scan**.

### NOTE

Rogue Scan cannot be enabled on a wireless interface when the Wireless Service Status on that interface is shutdown. First, resume service on the wireless interface.

4. Enter the **Scan Mode**. Select Background Scanning or Continuous Scanning. In Continuous Scanning mode the AP stops normal operation and scans continuously on that interface. In Background Scanning mode, the AP performs background scanning while doing normal AP operation on that interface.
5. If the Scan Mode is Background Scanning, then enter the **Scan Interval**.
  - The Scan Interval specifies the time period in minutes between scans in Background Scanning mode and can be set to any value between 1 and 1440 minutes.
6. Configure the **Scan Result Table Ageing Time**. The AP ages out older entries in the Rogue Scan result table if a detected station is inactive for more than this time. The valid range is from 60-7200 minutes, the default is 60 minutes.
7. Configure the **Scan Results Trap Notification Mode** to control the notification behavior when APs or stations are detected in a scan:
  - No Notification
  - Notify AP
  - Notify Client
  - Notify All (Notify both AP and Client detection)
8. Configure the **Scan Results Trap Report Style** to control the way detected stations are reported in the notification:
  - Report all detected stations since last scan (default)
  - Report all detected stations since start of scan
9. Configure the second wireless interface, if required.
10. Click **OK**.

The results of the Rogue Scan can be viewed in the **Status** page in the HTTP interface.

Groups	Alarm Host Table	Syslog	Rogue Scan
<p>Rogue Scan uses the selected wireless interface for scanning its coverage area for Access Points and Clients. To dedicate the AP's wireless interface to scanning set the scan mode to continuous scan. Note that while the wireless interface is in continuous scan mode it does not perform normal AP operations. To enable the AP's wireless interface to scan in the background while still performing normal AP operations, set the scan cycle time in minutes and set the scan mode to background scanning mode. Note that AP throughput decreases with an increase in scanning efficiency.</p> <p><i>Note1: When Rogue Scan is enabled, the <b>Security Alarm Group</b> must also be enabled and a <b>Trap Host</b> configured to receive the list of access points and clients detected during the scan.</i></p> <p><i>Note2: The scan parameter scan interval time can only be modified for background scanning mode.</i></p>			
<b>Wireless - A</b>			
Scan Mode	Background		
Scan Interval (1-1440 minutes)	1		
Enable Rogue Scan	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Number of New Stations detected in last scan	0		
<b>Wireless - B</b>			
Scan Mode	Background		
Scan Interval (1-1440 minutes)	1		
Enable Rogue Scan	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Number of New Stations detected in last scan	0		
<b>Scan Result Table</b>			
Ageing time (60-7200 minutes)	60		
<b>Scan Result Notification</b>			
Scan results trap notification mode	Notify All		
Scan results trap report style	Report Since Last Scan		

Figure 4-25 Rogue Scan Screen

## Bridge

The AP is a bridge between your wired and wireless networking devices. As a bridge, the functions performed by the AP include:

- MAC address learning
- Forward and filtering decision making
- Spanning Tree protocol used for loop avoidance

Once the AP is connected to your network, it learns which devices are connected to it and records their MAC addresses in the Learn Table. The table can hold up to 10,000 entries. To view the Learn Table, click on the **Monitor** button in the web interface and select the [Learn Table](#) tab.

The **Bridge** tab has four sub-tabs.

- [Spanning Tree](#)
- [Storm Threshold](#)
- [Intra BSS](#)
- [Packet Forwarding](#)

## Spanning Tree

A Spanning Tree is used to avoid redundant communication loops in networks with multiple bridging devices. Bridges do not have any inherent mechanism to avoid loops, because having redundant systems is a necessity in certain networks. However, redundant systems can cause Broadcast Storms, multiple frame copies, and MAC address table instability problems.

Complex network structures can create multiple loops within a network. The Spanning Tree configuration blocks certain ports on AP devices to control the path of communication within the network, avoiding loops and following a spanning tree structure.

For more information on Spanning Tree protocol, please see Section 8.0 of the IEEE 802.1d standard. The Spanning Tree configuration options are advanced settings. SYSTIMAX recommends that you leave these parameters at their default values unless you are familiar with the Spanning Tree protocol.

## Storm Threshold

Storm Threshold is an advanced Bridge setup option that you can use to protect the network against data overload by:

- Specifying a maximum number of frames per second as received from a single network device (identified by its MAC address).
- Specifying an absolute maximum number of messages per port.

The Storm Threshold parameters allow you to specify a set of thresholds for each port of the AP, identifying separate values for the number of broadcast messages/second and Multicast messages/second.

When the number of frames for a port or identified station exceeds the maximum value per second, the AP will ignore all subsequent messages issued by the particular network device, or ignore all messages of that type.

- **Address Threshold:** Enter the maximum allowed number of packets per second.
- **Ethernet Threshold:** Enter the maximum allowed number of packets per second.
- **Wireless Threshold:** Enter the maximum allowed number of packets per second.

## Intra BSS

The wireless clients (or *subscribers*) that associate with a certain AP form the Basic Service Set (BSS) of a network infrastructure. By default, wireless subscribers in the same BSS can communicate with each other. However, some administrators (such as wireless public spaces) may wish to block traffic between wireless subscribers that are associated with the same AP to prevent unauthorized communication and to conserve bandwidth. This feature enables you to prevent wireless subscribers within a BSS from exchanging traffic.

Although this feature is generally enabled in public access environments, Enterprise LAN administrators use it to conserve wireless bandwidth by limiting communication between wireless clients. For example, this feature prevents peer-to-peer file sharing or gaming over the wireless network.

To block Intra BSS traffic, set **Intra BSS Traffic Operation** to **Block**.

To allow Intra BSS traffic, set **Intra BSS Traffic Operation** to **Passthru**.

## Packet Forwarding

The Packet Forwarding feature enables you to redirect traffic generated by wireless clients that are all associated to the same AP to a single MAC address. This filters wireless traffic without burdening the AP and provides additional security by limiting potential destinations or by routing the traffic directly to a firewall. You can redirect to a specific port (Ethernet or WDS) or allow the bridge's learning process (and the forwarding table entry for the selected MAC address) to determine the optimal port.

### NOTE

The gateway to which traffic will be redirected should be a node on the Ethernet network. It should not be a wireless client.

## Configuring Interfaces for Packet Forwarding

Configure your AP to forward packets by specifying interface port(s) to which packets are redirected and a destination MAC address.

1. Within the **Packet Forwarding Configuration** screen, check the box labeled **Enable Packet Forwarding**.
2. Specify a destination **Packet Forwarding MAC Address**. The AP will redirect all unicast, multicast, and broadcast packets received from wireless clients to the address you specify.
3. Select a **Packet Forwarding Interface Port** from the drop-down menu. You can redirect traffic to:
  - Ethernet
  - A WDS connection (see [Wireless Distribution System \(WDS\)](#) for details)
  - Any (traffic is redirected to a port based on the bridge learning process)
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

## QoS

### Wireless Multimedia Extensions (WMM)/Quality of Service (QoS)

The AP supports Wi-Fi Multimedia which defines an intermediate solution for QoS functionality until the IEEE 802.11e specification is formally approved. WMM is based on a subset of the 802.11e standard, and defines enhancements to the MAC for wireless LAN applications with Quality of Service requirements, which include transport of voice traffic over IEEE 802.11 wireless LANs.

The enhancements are in the form of changes in protocol frame formats (addition of new fields and information elements), addition of new messages, definition of new protocol actions, channel access mechanisms (differentiated control of access to medium) and network elements (QoS/WMM aware APs, STAs), and configuration management.

WMM supports Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) for prioritized QoS services. The WMM/QoS feature can be enabled or disabled per wireless interface.

### QoS Policies

Perform the following procedure to enable QoS and add QoS policies:

1. Click **Configure > QoS > Policy**.

**Policy** Priority Mapping EDCA

This page is used to enable or disable the Quality of Service (QoS) feature and to configure QoS policies for each wireless interface. There are 5 possible QoS policy types to configure - Inbound Layer 2, outbound Layer 2, inbound Layer 3, outbound Layer 3, and SpectraLink. When a QoS policy is added, an entry for each QoS policy type is created with default values. You can then modify the default values for each QoS Policy type, if desired, and enable the QoS policy type. Depending on the policy type, a policy mapping index should be specified. For Layer 2 policies, an index from the 802.1p to 802.1D mapping table should be specified. For Layer 3 policies, an index from the 802.1p to IP DSCP mapping table should be specified. No mapping index is required for SpectraLink policy types. QoS marking are also supported and can be configured per policy type; QoS marking can be enabled or disabled.

The SSID table is used to apply QoS Policies configured in the Policy Table. Go to the [SSID/WLAN/Security](#) page and there you can specify the QoS Policy to be applied per SSID based on the policy index number

*Note: Like with adding a QoS Policy, when a QoS policy is deleted, all 5 QoS policy types are deleted. If you do not wish to have all 5 policy types per policy do not delete them, simply disable the ones that are not desired.*

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

**Wireless A**

Enable Quality of Service

QoS Maximum Medium Threshold (50-90)

**Wireless B**

Enable Quality of Service

QoS Maximum Medium Threshold (50-90)

OK Cancel

Figure 4-26 QoS Policies

2. To enable QoS, check the **Enable Quality of Service** checkbox.
3. Configure the **QoS Maximum Medium Threshold** for all Admission Controls. Admission will be granted if the new requested traffic stream and already admitted time is less than the *medium maximum threshold*.
4. To add or edit a QoS Policy, scroll down to the "QoS Policies Table" box and click the **Add** or **Edit** button. The **Add Entries** or **Edit Entries** screen appears. See [Figure 4-27](#).

**QoS Policies Table - Add Entries**

This page is used to create QoS Policies. By default when adding a QoS policy, all 5 QoS policy types are added. For Layer 2 policies, a priority mapping index from the 802.1p to 802.1d mapping table should be specified. For Layer 3 policies, a priority mapping index from the 802.1p to IP DSCP mapping table should be specified. No priority mapping index is needed for Spectralink QoS policy types. You can also enable or disable QoS marking on each policy type and enable or disable the different types.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

Policy Name	<input type="text"/>
Policy Type	<input type="text" value="inbound:Layer2"/>
Priority Mapping Index	<input type="text"/>
Enable QoS Marking	<input type="checkbox"/>
Policy Name	<input type="text"/>
Policy Type	<input type="text" value="inbound:Layer3"/>
Priority Mapping Index	<input type="text"/>
Enable QoS Marking	<input type="checkbox"/>
Policy Name	<input type="text"/>
Policy Type	<input type="text" value="outbound:Layer2"/>
Priority Mapping Index	<input type="text"/>
Enable QoS Marking	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 4-27 Add QoS Policy**

5. Enter the **Policy Name**.
6. Select the **Policy Type**:
  - **inlayer2**: inbound traffic direction, Layer 2 traffic type
  - **inlayer3**: inbound traffic direction, Layer 3 traffic type
  - **outlayer2**: outbound traffic direction, Layer 2 traffic type
  - **outlayer3**: inbound traffic direction, Layer 3 traffic type
  - **spectralink**: SpectraLink traffic
7. Enter the **Priority Mapping Index**.  
For layer 2 policies, an index from the 802.1p to 802.1d mapping table should be specified. For layer 3 policies, an index from the 802.1p to IP DSCP mapping table should be specified. No mapping index is required for SpectraLink.
8. Enable QoS marking by placing a check in the **Enable QoS Marking** box.
9. Click **OK**.



## Priority Mapping

Use this page to configure QoS 802.1p to 802.1d priority mappings (for layer 2 policies) and IP DSCP to 802.1d priority mappings (for layer 3 policies). The first entry in each table contains the recommended priority mappings. Custom entries can be added to each table with different priority mappings.

1. Click **Configure > QoS > Priority Mapping**.

This page is used to configure QoS 802.1D to 802.1p priority mappings and 802.1D To IP DSCP priority mappings. The first entry in each table contains the recommended priority mappings and cannot be deleted. Custom entries can be added to each table with different priority mappings.

### 802.1D to 802.1p Priority Mapping Table

Index	802.1D Priority	802.1p Priority	Status
1	0	0	Enable
1	1	1	Enable
1	2	2	Enable
1	3	3	Enable
1	4	4	Enable
1	5	5	Enable
1	6	6	Enable
1	7	7	Enable

### 802.1D to IP DSCP Priority Mapping Table

Index	802.1D Priority	IP DSCP Range	Status
1	0	0..7	Enable
1	1	8..15	Enable
1	2	16..23	Enable

Figure 4-28 Priority Mapping

2. Click **Add** in the QoS 802.1D to 802.1p Priority Mapping Table.

**QoS 802.1D to 802.1p Mapping Table - Add Entries**

This page is used to add 802.1D to 802.1p mappings. This table contains a one-to-one mapping of 802.1D to 802.1p priorities, so it requires all priorities to be specified. Please enter the desired values for 802.1p priorities and press the Ok button.

802.1D Priority	802.1p Priority
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7

OK Cancel

**Figure 4-29 Add Priority Mapping Entry**

3. Select the 802.1p Priority (from 0-7) for 802.1d Priorities 0-7.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Add** in the IP Precedence/DSCP ranges and 802.1d Priority table.
6. Select the IP DSCP Range for each 802.1d Priority.
7. Click **OK**.

**NOTE**

Changes to Priority Mapping require a reboot of the AP to take effect.

### Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA)

WMM uses Enhanced Distributed Channel Access, a prioritized CSMA/CA access mechanism used by WMM-enabled clients/AP in a WMM enabled BSS to realize different classes of differentiated Channel Access.

A wireless Entity is defined as all wireless clients and APs in the wireless medium contending for the common wireless medium. EDCA uses a separate channel access function for each of the Access Categories (Index) within a wireless entity. Each channel access function in a wireless entity that contends for the wireless medium as if it were a separate client contending for the wireless medium. Different channel access functions in a given Wireless Entity contend among themselves for access to the wireless medium in addition to contending with other clients.

### STA EDCA Table and AP EDCA Table

This page is used to configure the client (STA) and AP Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters. The EDCA parameter set provides information needed by the client stations for proper QoS operation during the wireless contention period. These parameters are used by the QoS enabled AP to establish policy, to change policies when accepting new stations or new traffic, or to adapt to changes in the offered load. The EDCA parameters assign priorities to traffic types where higher priority packets gain access to the wireless medium more frequently than lower priority packets.

**⇒ NOTE**

We have defined default recommended values for EDCA parameters; we recommend not modifying EDCA parameters unless strictly necessary.

Perform the following procedure to configure the Station and AP EDCA tables.

1. Click **Configure > QoS > EDCA**.

#### STA EDCA Table

Access Category	CWmin	CWmax	AIFSN	Tx OP Limit	Admission Control Mandatory
Best Effort	15	1023	3	0	false
Background	15	1023	7	0	false
Video	7	15	2	3008	false
Voice	3	7	2	1504	false
Best Effort	15	1023	3	0	false
Background	15	1023	7	0	false
Video	7	15	2	3008	false
Voice	3	7	2	1504	false

#### AP EDCA Table

Access Category	CWmin	CWmax	AIFSN	Tx OP Limit	Admission Control Mandatory
Best Effort	15	63	3	0	false
Background	15	1023	7	0	false
Video	7	15	1	3008	false
Voice	3	7	1	1504	false
Best Effort	15	63	3	0	false
Background	15	1023	7	0	false
Video	7	15	1	3008	false
Voice	3	7	1	1504	false

Figure 4-30 EDCA Tables

2. Click **Edit** and configure the following parameters in each table:

The screenshot shows the 'AP EDCA Table - Edit Entries' configuration page. It features three tables for different access categories under the 'Wireless A' section. Each table includes fields for Access Category, CWmin, CWmax, AIFSN, Tx OP Limit, and Admission Control Mandatory.

Access Category	Best Effort
CWmin	15
CWmax	63
AIFSN	3
Tx OP Limit	0
Admission Control Mandatory	false

Access Category	Background
CWmin	15
CWmax	1023
AIFSN	7
Tx OP Limit	0
Admission Control Mandatory	false

Access Category	Video
CWmin	7
CWmax	15
AIFSN	1
Tx OP Limit	3008
Admission Control Mandatory	false

Figure 4-31 Edit AP EDCA Tables

- **Index:** read-only. Indicates the index of the Access Category (1-4) being defined.
- **CWMin:** minimum Contention Window. Configurable range is 0 to 255.
- **CWMax:** maximum Contention Window. Configurable range is 0 to 65535.
- **AIFSN:** Arbitration IFS per access category. Configurable range is 2 to 15.
- **Tx OP Limit:** The Transmission Opportunity Limit. The Tx OP is an interval of time during which a particular QoS enhanced client has the right to initiate a frame exchange sequence onto the wireless medium. The Tx OP Limit defines the upper limit placed on the value of Tx OP a wireless entity can obtain for a particular access category. Configurable range is 0 to 65535.
- **Admission Control Mandatory:** Possible values are True or False. Admission control defines if an Access Point accepts or rejects a requested traffic stream with certain QoS specifications, based on available channel capacity and link conditions. Admission control can be configured for each Access Category (Index).  
On the Policy sub-tab, the user can also configure a *medium maximum threshold* for all Admission Controls. Admission will be granted if the new requested traffic stream and already admitted time is less than the *medium maximum threshold*.

**NOTE**

Changes to EDCA parameters require a reboot of the AP to take effect.

## RADIUS Profiles

Configuring Radius profiles on the AP allows a user to define a profile for RADIUS Servers used by the system or by a VLAN. The network administrator can define [RADIUS Servers per Authentication Mode and per VLAN](#).

The AP communicates with the RADIUS server defined in a profile to provide the following features:

- [MAC Access Control Via RADIUS Authentication](#)
- [802.1x Authentication using RADIUS](#)
- [RADIUS Accounting](#)

Also, [RADIUS Based Management Access](#) allows centralized user management.

The network administrator can configure default RADIUS authentication servers to be used on a system-wide basis, or in networks with VLANs enabled the administrator can also configure separate authentication servers to be used for MAC authentication, EAP authentication, or Accounting in each VLAN. You can configure the AP to communicate with up to six different RADIUS servers per VLAN/SSID:

- Primary Authentication Server (MAC-based authentication)
- Back-up Authentication Server (MAC-based authentication)
- Primary Authentication Server (EAP/802.1x authentication)
- Back-up Authentication Server (EAP/802.1x authentication)
- Primary Accounting Server
- Back-up Accounting Server

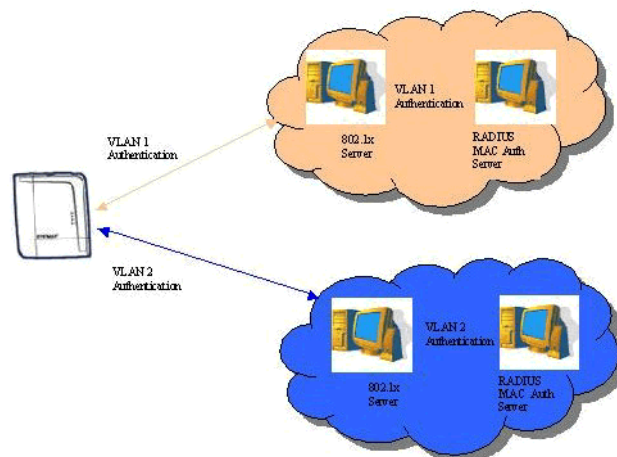
The back-up servers are optional, but when configured, the AP will communicate with the back-up server if the primary server is off-line. After the AP has switched to the backup server, it will periodically check the status of the primary RADIUS server every five (5) minutes. Once the primary RADIUS server is again online, the AP automatically reverts from the backup RADIUS server back to the primary RADIUS server. All subsequent requests are then sent to the primary RADIUS server.

You can view monitoring statistics for each of the configured RADIUS servers.

## RADIUS Servers per Authentication Mode and per VLAN

The user can configure separate RADIUS authentication servers for each authentication mode and for each SSID (VLAN). For example:

- The user can configure separate RADIUS servers for RADIUS MAC authentication and 802.1x authentication
- The user can configure separate RADIUS servers for each VLAN: the Sales VLAN could support only WEP clients, whereas the Marketing VLAN could support 802.1x and WEP clients.



**Figure 4-32 RADIUS Servers per VLAN**

This figure shows a network with separate authentication servers for each authentication type and for each VLAN. The clients in VLAN 1 are authenticated using the authentication servers configured for VLAN 1. The type of authentication

server used depends on whether the authentication is done for an 802.1x client or a non-802.1x client. The clients in VLAN 2 are authenticated using a different set of authentication servers configured for authenticating users in VLAN 2. Authentication servers for each VLAN shall be configured as part of the configuration options for that VLAN. RADIUS profiles are independent of VLANs. The user can define any profile to be the default and associate all VLANs to that profile. Four profiles are created by default, "MAC Authentication", "EAP Authentication", "Accounting", and "Management".

## RADIUS Servers Enforcing VLAN Access Control

A RADIUS server can be used to enforce VLAN access control in two ways:

- Authorize the SSID the client uses to connect to the AP. The SSID determines the VLAN that the client gets assigned to.
- Assigning the user to a VLAN by specifying the VLAN membership information of the user.

## Configuring RADIUS Profiles

A RADIUS server Profile consists of a Primary and a Secondary RADIUS server that get assigned to act as either MAC Authentication servers, 802.1x/EAP Authentication servers, or Accounting Servers in the VLAN Configuration. Refer to [Configuring Security Profiles](#).

The RADIUS Profiles Sub-tab allows you to add new RADIUS profiles or modify or delete existing profiles.

This page is used to configure the RADIUS Server Profiles. A RADIUS server Profile consists of a Primary and a Secondary RADIUS server.

The RADIUS server profiles created on this page will be assigned to act as MAC authentication / EAP authentication / Accounting server in the SSID configuration

Click on "ADD" to create a new profile. To Modify an existing profile, select the profile and click "Edit". To Delete an existing profile select the profile and click "Delete".

*Note: Changes to the RADIUS Server Profiles will not require a reboot of the device.*

Buttons: Add, Edit, Delete

Index	ProfileName	Primary Status	Secondary Status
1	MAC Authentication	Disabled	Disabled
2	EAP Authentication	Disabled	Disabled
3	Accounting	Disabled	Disabled
4	Management Access	Disabled	Disabled

Figure 4-33 RADIUS Server Profiles

## Adding or Modifying a RADIUS Server Profile

Perform the following procedure to add a RADIUS server profile and to configure its parameters.

1. Click **Add** to create a new profile. To Modify an existing profile, select the profile and click Edit. To delete an existing profile, select the profile and click Delete. You cannot delete a RADIUS server profile if you are using it in an SSID. Also, the four default RADIUS server profiles cannot be deleted (indices 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, and 4.1, 4.2.)
2. Configure the following parameters for the RADIUS Server profile (refer to [Figure 4-34](#)):

### NOTE

This page configures only the Primary RADIUS Server associated with the profile. After configuring these parameters, save them by clicking OK. Then, to configure the Secondary RADIUS Server, edit the profile from the main page.

Alarms Bridge QoS **RADIUS Profiles** SSID/VLAN/Security

This page is used to add a RADIUS Server Profile. This page creates the primary server. To configure the secondary server, edit this profile from the RADIUS profiles page.

The RADIUS server profiles created on this page are to be assigned to act as MAC authentication / EAP authentication / Accounting server in the SSID configuration

**DNS is disabled.** For configuring server name in the RADIUS profile, enable **DNS client** first.

**VLAN is disabled.** For configuring VLAN ID in the RADIUS profile, enable **VLAN** first.

**Server Profile Name**

MAC Address Format Type: DashDelimited

Accounting update interval (minutes): 0

Accounting inactivity timer (minutes): 5

Authorization lifetime (seconds): 0

**Server Parameter**

Server Addressing Format: Primary

Server Name/IP Address: IP Address

Server Name/IP Address: 0.0.0.0

Destination Port: 1812

Server VLAN ID (VLAN is disabled): untagged

Shared Secret: xxxxxx

Confirm Shared Secret: xxxxxx

Response Time (seconds): 3

Maximum Retransmissions (0-4): 3

Server Status: Disable

Figure 4-34 Add RADIUS Server Profile

- **Server Profile Name:** the profile name. This is the name used to associated a VLAN to the profile. Refer to [Configuring Security Profiles](#). The Server Profile Name is also used in the Configure > Management > Services page to specify the RADIUS profile to be used for RADIUS Based Management Access.
- **MAC Address Format Type:** This parameter should correspond to the format in which the clients' 12-digit MAC addresses are listed within the RADIUS server. Available options are:
  - Dash delimited: dash between each pair of digits: xx-yy-zz-aa-bb-cc
  - Colon delimited: colon between each pair of digits: xx:yy:zz:aa:bb:cc
  - Single dash delimited: dash between the sixth and seventh digits: xxyyzz-aabbcc
  - No delimiters: No characters or spaces between pairs of hexadecimal digits: xxyyzaabbcc
- **Accounting update interval:** Enter the time interval (in minutes) for sending Accounting Update messages to the RADIUS server. A value of 0 (default) means that the AP will not send Accounting Update messages.
- **Accounting inactivity timer:** Enter the accounting inactivity timer. This parameter supports a value from 1-60 minutes. The default is 5 minutes.
- **Authorization lifetime:** Enter the time, in seconds, each client session may be active before being automatically re-authenticated. This parameter supports a value between 900 and 43200 seconds. The default is 900 sec.
- **Server Addressing Format:** select IP Address or Name. If you want to identify RADIUS servers by name, you must configure the AP as a DNS Client. See DNS Client for details.
- **Server Name/IP Address:** Enter the server's name or IP address.
- **Destination Port:** Enter the port number which the AP and the server will use to communicate. By default, RADIUS servers communicate on port 1812.
- **Server VLAN ID:** Indicates the VLAN that uses this RADIUS server profile. If VLAN is disabled, the text "VLAN is disabled" will appear.
- **Shared Secret and Confirm Shared Secret:** Enter the password shared by the RADIUS server and the AP. The same password must also be configured on the RADIUS server.
- **Response Time (seconds):** Enter the maximum time, in seconds, that the AP should wait for the RADIUS server to respond to a request. The range is 1-10 seconds; the default is 3 seconds.

- **Maximum Retransmissions** (0-4): Enter the maximum number of times an authentication request may be transmitted. The range is 0 to 4, the default is 3.
  - **Server Status**: Select Enable from the drop-down box to enable the RADIUS Server Profile.
3. Click **OK**.
  4. Select the Profile and click **Edit** to configure the Secondary RADIUS Server, if required.

## MAC Access Control Via RADIUS Authentication

If you want to control wireless access to the network and if your network includes a RADIUS Server, you can store the list of MAC addresses on the RADIUS server rather than configure each AP individually. You can define a RADIUS Profile that specifies the IP Address of the server that contains a central list of MAC Address values identifying the authorized stations that may access the wireless network. You must specify information for at least the primary RADIUS server. The back-up RADIUS server is optional.

### **NOTE**

Each VLAN can be configured to use a separate RADIUS server (and backup server) for MAC authentication. MAC access control can be separately enabled for each VLAN.

### **NOTE**

Contact your RADIUS server manufacturer if you have problems configuring the server or have problems using RADIUS authentication.

## 802.1x Authentication using RADIUS

You must configure a primary EAP/802.1x Authentication server to use 802.1x security. A back-up server is optional.

### **NOTE**

Each VLAN can be configured to use a separate RADIUS server (and backup server) for 802.1x authentication. 802.1x authentication ("EAP authentication") can be separately enabled for each VLAN.

## RADIUS Accounting

Using an external RADIUS server, the AP can track and record the length of client sessions on the Access Point by sending RADIUS accounting messages per RFC2866. When a wireless client is successfully authenticated, RADIUS accounting is initiated by sending an "Accounting Start" request to the RADIUS server. When the wireless client session ends, an "Accounting Stop" request is sent to the RADIUS server.

### **NOTE**

Each VLAN can be configured to use a separate RADIUS accounting server (and backup accounting server).

## Session Length

Accounting sessions continue when a client reauthenticates to the same AP. Sessions are terminated when:

- A client disassociates.
- A client does not transmit any data to the AP for a fixed amount of time.
- A client is detected on a different interface.

If the client roams from one AP to another, one session is terminated and a new session is begun.

### **NOTE**

This feature requires RADIUS authentication using MAC Access Control or 802.1x. Wireless clients configured in the Access Point's static MAC Access Control list are not tracked.

## Authentication and Accounting Attributes

Additionally, the AP supports a number of Authentication and Accounting Attributes defined in RFC2865, RFC2866, RFC2869, and RFC3580.



### Authentication Attributes

- State: Received in Access-Accept Packet by the AP during Authentication and sent back as-is during Re-Authentication.
- Class: Received in Access-Accept Packet by the AP during Authentication and back as in Accounting Packets.
- Session-Timeout
  - If the RADIUS server does not send a Session-Timeout, the AP will set the subscriber expiration time to 0, which means indefinite access.
  - The Termination Action attribute defines how the Session-Timeout attribute will be interpreted. If the Termination Action is DEFAULT, then the session is terminated on expiration of the Session-Timeout time interval. If Termination Action is RADIUS-Request, then re-authentication is done on expiration on the session.
  - If the RADIUS server sends a Session-Timeout, the value specified by the Session-Timeout attribute will take precedence over the configured Authorization Lifetime value.
- Termination-Action
  - Valid values are: Default (0), RADIUS-Request (1)
- Idle Timeout
  - The AP internally maintains the Idle-Timeout attribute obtained for each of the users during their authentication process, and uses this time interval in place of accounting inactivity time for timing out clients.
- Calling Station Id
  - MAC address of the client getting authenticated.
- Called Station Id
  - The AP sends the MAC address of its own wireless interface with which the client getting authenticated is getting associated, appended with the SSID. If VLAN is enabled, the SSID and corresponding VLAN ID get appended.
- Acct-Interim-Interval
  - Obtained during the Authentication process and used for determining the time interval for sending Accounting Update messages.
  - This attribute value takes precedence over the value of the Accounting Update Interval.

### Accounting Attributes

- Acct-Delay-Time
  - Indicates how many seconds the AP has been trying to send a particular packet related to a particular user. This time can be used at the server to determine the approximate time of the event generating this accounting request.
- Acct-Session-Time
  - Acct-Session-Time is calculated the following way (for each transmitted/retransmitted Acct-Stop):  
Acct-Session-Time = time of last sent packet - subscriber login time.
- Acct-Input-Octets
  - Number of octets (bytes) received by subscriber.
- Acct-Output-Octets
  - Number of octets (bytes) sent by subscriber.
- Acct-Input-Packets
  - Number of packets received by subscriber.
- Acct-Output-Packets
  - Number of packets sent by subscriber.
- Acct-Terminate Cause
  - Indicates how the session was terminated.
- Vendor Specific Attributes

## SSID/VLAN/Security

The AP provides several security features to protect your network from unauthorized access. The SSID/VLAN/Security tab contains the following sub-tabs that allow for configuration of security features:

- [Management VLAN](#)
- [Security Profile](#)
- [MAC Access](#)
- [Wireless-A or Wireless-B](#)

The AP also provides Broadcast SSID/Closed System and Rogue Scan to protect your network from unauthorized access. See the [Broadcast SSID and Closed System](#) and [Rogue Scan](#) sections for more information.

## Management VLAN

### VLAN Overview

Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) are logical groupings of network hosts. Defined by software settings, other VLAN members or resources appear (to clients) to be on the same physical segment, no matter where they are attached on the logical LAN or WAN segment. They simplify traffic flow between clients and their frequently-used or restricted resources.

VLANs now extend as far as the reach of the Access Point signal. Clients can be segmented into wireless sub-networks via SSID and VLAN assignment. A Client can access the network by connecting to an AP configured to support its assigned SSID/VLAN.

AP devices are fully VLAN-ready; however, by default VLAN support is disabled. Before enabling VLAN support, certain network settings should be configured, and network resources such as a VLAN-aware switch, a RADIUS server, and possibly a DHCP server should be available.

Once enabled, VLANs are used to conveniently, efficiently, and easily manage your network in the following ways:

- Manage adds, moves, and changes from a single point of contact
- Define and monitor groups
- Reduce broadcast and multicast traffic to unnecessary destinations
  - Improve network performance and reduce latency
- Increase security
  - Secure network restricts members to resources on their own VLAN
  - Clients roam without compromising security

VLAN tagged data is collected and distributed through an AP's wireless interface(s) based on Network Name (SSID). An Ethernet port on the Access Point connects a wireless cell or network to a wired backbone. The Access Points communicate across a VLAN-capable switch that analyzes VLAN-tagged packet headers and directs traffic to the appropriate ports. On the wired network, a RADIUS server authenticates traffic and a DHCP server manages IP addresses for the VLAN(s). Resources like servers and printers may be present, and a hub may include multiple APs, extending the network over a larger area.

In this figure, the numbered items correspond to the following components:

1. VLAN-enabled Access Point
2. VLAN-aware switch (IEEE 802.1Q uplink)
3. AP management via wired host (SNMP, Web interface or CLI)
4. DHCP Server
5. RADIUS Server
6. VLAN 1
7. VLAN 2

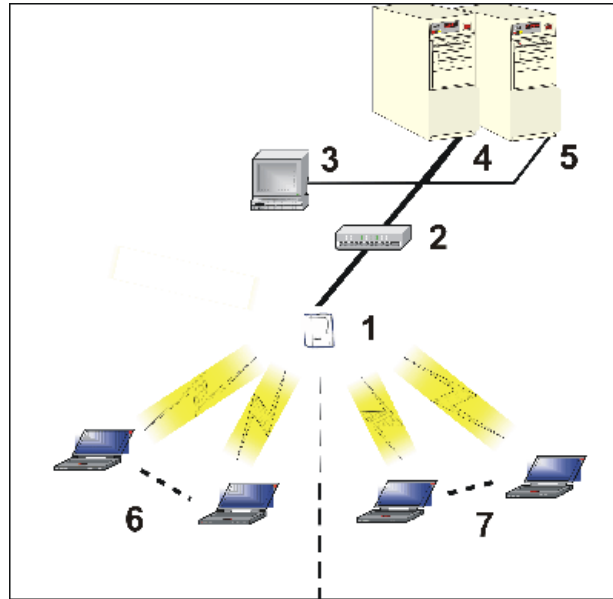


Figure 4-35 Components of a Typical VLAN

## VLAN Workgroups and Traffic Management

Access Points that are not VLAN-capable typically transmit broadcast and multicast traffic to all wireless Network Interface Cards (NICs). This process wastes wireless bandwidth and degrades throughput performance. In comparison, a VLAN-capable AP is designed to efficiently manage delivery of broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic to wireless clients.

The AP assigns clients to a VLAN based on a Network Name (SSID). The AP can support up to 16 SSID/VLAN pairs per radio.

The AP matches packets transmitted or received to a network name with the associated VLAN. Traffic received by a VLAN is only sent on the wireless interface associated with that same VLAN. This eliminates unnecessary traffic on the wireless LAN, conserving bandwidth and maximizing throughput.

In addition to enhancing wireless traffic management, the VLAN-capable AP supports easy assignment of wireless users to workgroups. In a typical scenario, each user VLAN represents a workgroup; for example, one VLAN could be used for an EMPLOYEE workgroup and the other, for a GUEST workgroup.

In this scenario, the AP would assign every packet it accepted to a VLAN. Each packet would then be identified as EMPLOYEE or GUEST, depending on which radio received it. The AP would insert VLAN headers or “tags” with identifiers into the packets transmitted on the wired backbone to a network switch.

Finally, the switch would be configured to route packets from the EMPLOYEE workgroup to the appropriate corporate resources such as printers and servers. Packets from the GUEST workgroup could be restricted to a gateway that allowed access to only the Internet. A member of the GUEST workgroup could send and receive e-mail and access the Internet, but would be prevented from accessing servers or hosts on the local corporate network.

### Typical User VLAN Configurations

VLANs segment network traffic into workgroups, which enable you to limit broadcast and multicast traffic. Workgroups enable clients from different VLANs to access different resources using the same network infrastructure. Clients using the same physical network are limited to those resources available to their workgroup.

The AP can segment users into a maximum of 16 different workgroups per radio (the AirSPEED AP542, with its two radios, can segment into 32 workgroups) based on an SSID/VLAN pair (also referred as a VLAN Workgroup or a Sub-network).

The three primary scenarios for using VLAN workgroups are as follows:

1. VLAN disabled: Your network does not use VLANs, and you cannot configure the AP to use multiple SSIDs.
2. VLAN enabled, each VLAN workgroup uses a different VLAN ID Tag
3. VLAN enabled, a mixture of Tagged and Untagged workgroups
4. VLAN enabled, all VLANs untagged: VLAN is enabled in order to use SSID. (Note that typical use of SSID assumes actual use of VLANs.)

### Enabling or Disabling VLAN Protocol

#### Control Access to the AP

Management access to the AP can easily be secured by making management stations or hosts and the AP itself members of a common VLAN. Simply configure a non-zero management VLAN ID and enable VLAN to restrict management of the AP to members of the same VLAN.



#### CAUTION

If a non-zero management VLAN ID is configured then management access to the AP is restricted to wired or wireless hosts that are members of the same VLAN. Ensure your management platform or host is a member of the same VLAN before attempting to manage the AP.

1. Click **Configure > SSID/VLAN/Security > Mgmt VLAN**.
2. Set the **VLAN Management ID** to a value between -1 and 4094 (a value of 0 disables VLAN management).
3. Place a check mark in the **Enable VLAN Protocol** box.

#### Provide Access to a Wireless Host in the Same Workgroup

The VLAN feature can allow wireless clients to manage the AP. If the VLAN Management ID matches a VLAN User ID, then those wireless clients who are members of that VLAN will have AP management access.



#### CAUTION

Once a VLAN Management ID is configured and is equivalent to one of the VLAN User IDs on the AP, all members of that User VLAN will have management access to the AP. Be careful to restrict VLAN membership to those with legitimate access to the AP.

1. Click **Configure > SSID/VLAN/Security > Mgmt VLAN**.
2. Set the **VLAN Management ID** to use the same VLAN ID as one of the configured SSID/VLAN pairs.
3. Place a check mark in the **Enable VLAN Protocol** box.

#### Disable VLAN Management

1. Click **Configure > SSID/VLAN/Security > Mgmt VLAN**.
2. Remove the check mark from the **Enable VLAN Protocol** box (to disable all VLAN functionality) or set the **VLAN Management ID** to -1 (to disable VLAN Management only).



#### NOTE

If you disable VLAN Protocol, you will be unable to configure security per SSID.

## Security Profile

The AP supports the following Security features:

- **WEP Encryption:** The original encryption technique specified by the IEEE 802.11 standard.
- **802.1x Authentication:** An IEEE standard for client authentication.
- **Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2):** A new standard that provides improved encryption security over WEP.

## WEP Encryption

The IEEE 802.11 standards specify an optional encryption feature, known as Wired Equivalent Privacy or WEP, that is designed to provide a wireless LAN with a security level equal to what is found on a wired Ethernet network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on an 802.11 network using an Encryption Key (also known as a WEP Key).

When Encryption is enabled, two 802.11 devices must have the same Encryption Keys and both devices must be configured to use Encryption in order to communicate. If one device is configured to use Encryption but a second device is not, then the two devices will not communicate, even if both devices have the same Encryption Keys.

## 802.1x Authentication

IEEE 802.1x is a standard that provides a means to authenticate and authorize network devices attached to a LAN port. A port in the context of IEEE 802.1x is a point of attachment to the LAN, either a physical Ethernet connection or a wireless link to an Access Point. 802.1x requires a RADIUS server and uses the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) as a standards-based authentication framework, and supports automatic key distribution for enhanced security. The EAP-based authentication framework can easily be upgraded to keep pace with future EAP types.

Popular EAP types include:

- **EAP-Message Digest 5 (MD5):** Username/Password-based authentication; does not support automatic key distribution
- **EAP-Transport Layer Security (TLS):** Certificate-based authentication (a certificate is required on the server and each client); supports automatic key distribution
- **EAP-Tunneled Transport Layer Security (TTLS):** Certificate-based authentication (a certificate is required on the server; a client's username/password is tunneled to the server over a secure connection); supports automatic key distribution
- **PEAP - Protected EAP with MS-CHAP:** Secure username/password-based authentication; supports automatic key distribution

Different servers support different EAP types and each EAP type provides different features. Refer to the documentation that came with your RADIUS server to determine which EAP types it supports.

### NOTE

The AP supports the following EAP types when Security Mode is set to **802.1x, WPA, or 802.11i (WPA2)**: EAP-TLS, PEAP, EAP-TTLS, EAP-MD5, and EAP-SIM.

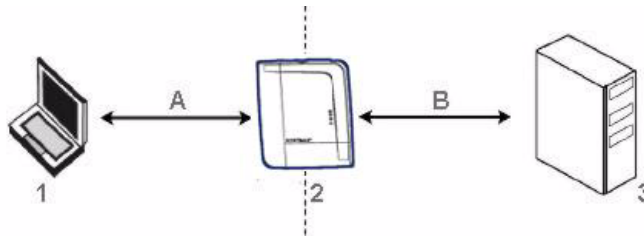
## Authentication Process

There are three main components in the authentication process. The standard refers to them as:

1. Supplicant (client PC)
2. Authenticator (Access Point)
3. Authentication server (RADIUS server)

When the Security Mode is set to 802.1x Station, WPA Station, or 802.11i Station you need to configure your RADIUS server for authentication purposes.

Prior to successful authentication, an unauthenticated client PC cannot send any data traffic through the AP device to other systems on the LAN. The AP inhibits all data traffic from a particular client PC until the client PC is authenticated. Regardless of its authentication status, a client PC can always exchange 802.1x messages in the clear with the AP (the client begins encrypting data after it has been authenticated).



**Figure 4-36 RADIUS Authentication Illustrated**

The AP acts as a pass-through device to facilitate communications between the client PC and the RADIUS server. The AP (2) and the client (1) exchange 802.1x messages using an EAPOL (EAP Over LAN) protocol (A). Messages sent from the client station are encapsulated by the AP and transmitted to the RADIUS (3) server using EAP extensions (B). Upon receiving a reply EAP packet from the RADIUS, the message is typically forwarded to the client, after translating it back to the EAPOL format. Negotiations take place between the client and the RADIUS server. After the client has been successfully authenticated, the client receives an Encryption Key from the AP (if the EAP type supports automatic key distribution). The client uses this key to encrypt data after it has been authenticated.

For 802.11a and 802.11b/g clients that communicate with an AP, each client receives its own unique encryption key; this is known as Per User Per Session Encryption Keys.

## Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2)

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a security standard designed by the Wi-Fi Alliance in conjunction with the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). The AP supports WPA2, defined in the IEEE 802.11i security standard.

WPA is a replacement for Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), the encryption technique specified by the original 802.11 standard. WEP has several vulnerabilities that have been widely publicized. WPA addresses these weaknesses and provides a stronger security system to protect wireless networks.

WPA provides the following new security measures not available with WEP:

- Improved packet encryption using the Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) and the Michael Message Integrity Check (MIC).
- Per-user, per-session dynamic encryption keys:
  - Each client uses a different key to encrypt and decrypt unicast packets exchanged with the AP
  - A client's key is different for every session; it changes each time the client associates with an AP
  - The AP uses a single global key to encrypt broadcast packets that are sent to all clients simultaneously
  - Encryption keys change periodically based on the **Re-keying Interval** parameter
  - WPA uses 128-bit encryption keys
- Dynamic Key distribution
  - The AP generates and maintains the keys for its clients
  - The AP securely delivers the appropriate keys to its clients
- Client/server mutual authentication
  - 802.1x
  - Pre-shared key (for networks that do not have an 802.1x solution implemented)

### ⇒ NOTE

For more information on WPA, see the Wi-Fi Alliance Web site at <http://www.wi-fi.org>.

The AP supports the following WPA authentication modes:

- **WPA:** The AP uses 802.1x to authenticate clients. You should only use an EAP that supports mutual authentication and session key generation, such as EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, and PEAP. See [802.1x Authentication](#) for details.
- **WPA-PSK (Pre-Shared Key):** For networks that do not have 802.1x implemented, you can configure the AP to authenticate clients based on a Pre-Shared Key. This is a shared secret that is manually configured on the AP and each of its clients. The Pre-Shared Key must be 256 bits long, which is either 64 hexadecimal digits or 32 alphanumeric characters. The AP also supports a **PSK Pass Phrase** option to facilitate the creation of the Pre-Shared Key (so a user can enter an easy-to-remember phrase rather than a string of characters).

- **802.11i** (also known as WPA2): The AP authenticates clients according to the 802.11i standard, using 802.1x authentication, an AES cipher, and re-keying.
- **802.11i-PSK** (also known as WPA2 PSK): The AP uses an AES cipher, and authenticates clients based on a Pre-Shared Key. The Pre-Shared Key must be 256 bits long, which is either 64 hexadecimal digits or 32 alphanumeric characters. The AP also supports a **PSK Pass Phrase** option to facilitate the creation of the Pre-Shared Key (so a user can enter an easy-to-remember phrase rather than a string of characters).

### Authentication Protocol Hierarchy

There is a hierarchy of authentication protocols defined for the AP.

The hierarchy is as follows, from Highest to lowest:

- 802.1x authentication
- MAC Access Control via RADIUS Authentication
- MAC Access Control through individual APs' MAC Access Control Lists

If you have both 802.1x and MAC authentication enabled, the 802.1x results will take effect. This is required in order to propagate the WEP keys to the clients in such cases. Once you disable 802.1x on the AP, you will see the effects of MAC authentication.

### VLANs and Security Profiles

The AirSPEED AP542 allows you to segment wireless networks into multiple sub-networks based on Network Name (SSID) and VLAN membership. A Network Name (SSID) identifies a wireless network. Clients associate with Access Points that share an SSID. During installation, the [Setup Wizard](#) prompts you to configure a Primary Network Name for each wireless interface.

After initial setup and once VLAN is enabled, the AP can be configured to support up to 16 SSIDs per wireless interface to segment wireless networks based on VLAN membership.

Each VLAN can be associated to a Security Profile and RADIUS Server Profiles. A Security Profile defines the allowed wireless clients, and authentication and encryption types. Refer to [VLANs and Security Profiles](#) for configuration details.

## Configuring Security Profiles

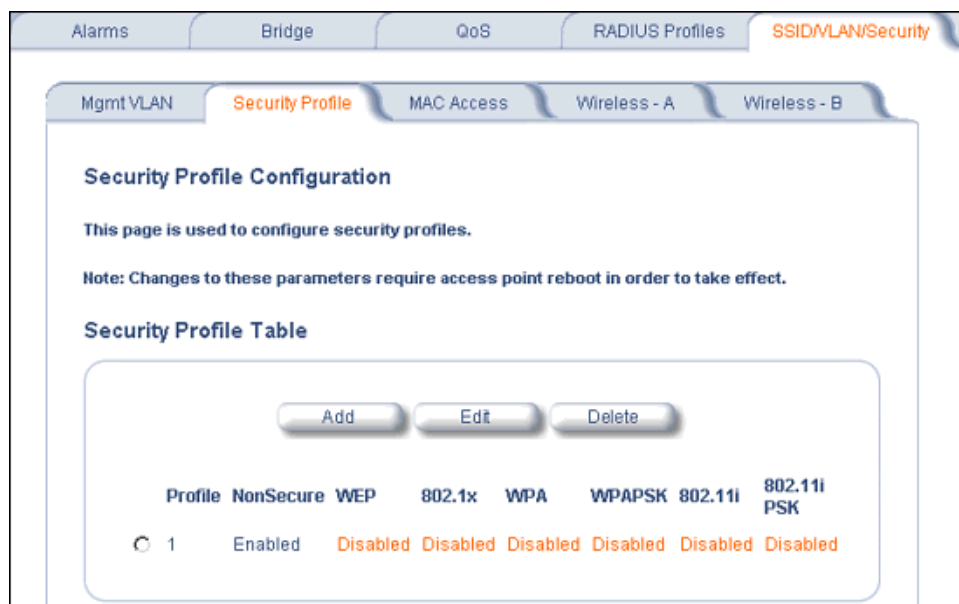
Security policies can be configured and applied on the AP as a whole, or on a per VLAN basis. When VLAN is disabled on the AP, the user can configure a security profile for each interface of the AP. When VLANs are enabled and Security per SSID is enabled, the user can configure a security profile for each VLAN.

The user defines a security policy by specifying one or more values for the following parameters:

- Wireless STA types (WPA station, 802.11i (WPA2) station, 802.1x station, WEP station) that can associate to the AP.
- Authentication mechanisms (802.1x, RADIUS MAC authentication) that are used to authenticate clients for each type of station.
- Cipher Suites (CCMP, TKIP, WEP) used for encapsulating the wireless data for each type of station.

Up to 16 security profiles can be configured per wireless interface.

1. Click **Configure > SSID/VLAN/Security > Security Profile**.



**Figure 4-37 Security Profile Configuration**

2. Click **Add** in the Security Profile Table to create a new entry. To Modify an existing profile, select the profile and click Edit. To delete an existing profile, select the profile and click Delete. You cannot delete a Security Profile used in an SSID. Note that the first Security Profile (index 1.1 to 1.7) cannot be deleted.
3. Configure one or more types of wireless stations (security modes) that are allowed access to the AP under the security profile. The WEP/PSK parameters are separately configurable for each security mode. To enable a security mode in the profile (Non Secure Station, WEP Station, 802.1x Station, WPA Station, WPA-PSK Station, 802.11i (WPA2) Station, 802.11i-PSK Station), check the box next to the mode.  
If the security mode selected in a profile is WEP, WPA-PSK, or 802.11i-PSK, then you must configure the WEP or Pre-Shared Keys.
4. Configure the parameters as follows for each enabled security mode. Refer to [Figure 4-38](#):
  - **Non Secure Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: None. The AP allows access to Stations without authentication.
      - Non secure station should be used only with WEP or 802.1x security mode.
    - Cipher: None
  - **WEP Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: None
    - Cipher: WEP
    - Encryption Key 0, Encryption Key 1, Encryption Key 2, Encryption Key 3
    - Encryption Key Length: 64, 128, or 152 Bits.



- For 64-bit encryption, an encryption key is 10 hexadecimal characters (0-9 and A-F) or 5 ASCII characters (see [ASCII Character Chart](#)).
  - For 128-bit encryption, an encryption key is 26 hexadecimal characters or 13 ASCII characters.
  - For 152-bit encryption, an encryption key is 32 hexadecimal characters or 16 ASCII characters.
  - Encryption Transmit Key: select Key 0, Key 1, Key 2, or Key 3
  - **802.1x Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: 802.1x
    - Cipher: WEP
      - If 802.1x is enabled simultaneously with WEP, the 802.1x Station's encryption key length is determined by the WEP encryption key.
  - **WPA Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: 802.1x
    - Cipher: TKIP
  - **WPA-PSK Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: PSK
    - Cipher: TKIP
    - PSK Passphrase: an 8-63 character user-defined phrase. It is recommended a passphrase of at least 13 characters, including both letters and numbers, and upper and lower case characters to ensure that the generated key cannot be easily deciphered by network infiltrators.
  - **802.11i Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: 802.1x
    - Cipher: AES
  - **802.11i-PSK Station:**
    - Authentication Mode: PSK
    - Cipher: AES
    - PSK Passphrase: an 8-63 character user-defined phrase. It is recommended a passphrase of at least 13 characters, including both letters and numbers, and upper and lower case characters to ensure that the generated key cannot be easily deciphered by network infiltrators.
5. When finished configuring all parameters, click **OK**.
  6. If you selected a Security Mode of 802.1x Station or WPA Station, you must configure a RADIUS 802.1x/EAP server. Refer to [RADIUS Profiles](#).  
Security Profile 1 will be used by default for all wireless interfaces.
  7. Refer to the following section for advanced VLAN configuration options: [Adding or Modifying an SSID/VLAN with VLAN Protocol Disabled](#).
  8. Reboot the AP.

Alarms
Bridge
QoS
RADIUS Profiles
SSID/LAN/Security

### Security Profile Table - Add Entries

This page is used to edit a Security Profile.

If the WEP security mode is configured, then the appropriate key size must be configured. The access point supports 64, 128, and 152 bit encryption keys. The following table provides information on how to configure encryption keys using HEX or ASCII values.

	Configuration in Hex	Configuration in ASCII
64 bit encryption key	10 characters (0-F)	5 alphanumeric characters
128 bit encryption key	26 characters (0-F)	13 alphanumeric characters
152 bit encryption key	32 characters (0-F)	16 alphanumeric characters

If the WPA/PSK or 802.11i/PSK security mode is configured, then the appropriate PSK pass phrase must be configured. The PSK pass phrase consists of a alpha numeric string from 8 to 63 characters.

802.1x, WPA or 802.11i security mode can be configured only if an EAP RADIUS server profile is configured and enabled. Certain security modes and their combinations may not be available depending on the security capabilities of the wireless interface.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

*Non Secure Station*

Authentication Mode: None

Cipher: None

*WEP Station*

Authentication Mode: None

Cipher: WEP

Encryption Key 0:

Encryption Key 1:

Encryption Key 2:

Encryption Key 3:

Encryption Transmit Key:

*802.1x Station*

Authentication Mode: 802.1x

Cipher: WEP

Encryption Key Length:

*WPA Station*

Authentication Mode: 802.1x

Cipher: TKIP

*WPA-PSK Station*

Authentication Mode: PSK

Cipher: TKIP

PSK Passphrase:

*802.11i Station*

Authentication Mode: 802.1x

Cipher: AES

*802.11i-PSK Station*

Authentication Mode: PSK

Cipher: AES

PSK Passphrase:

Figure 4-38 Security Profile Table - Add Entries

## MAC Access

The MAC Access sub-tab allows you to build a list of stations, identified by their MAC addresses, authorized to access the network through the AP. The list is stored inside each AP within your network. Note that you must reboot the AP for any changes to the MAC Access Control Table to take effect. Up to 1000 entries can be made in the table.

The “MAC ACL Status” parameter (configurable by clicking **SSID/VLAN > Wireless-A or Wireless-B**) is per VLAN if VLAN Management is enabled. All other parameters besides “MAC ACL Status” are configured per AP, even if VLAN is enabled.

The following list details the configurable MAC Access parameters.

### ⇒ NOTE

MAC Access Control status is enabled or disabled when configuring each Security Profile.

- **Operation Type:** Choose between **Passthru** and **Block**. This determines how the stations identified in the MAC Access Control Table are filtered.
  - If set to **Passthru**, only the addresses listed in the Control Table will pass through the bridge.
  - If set to **Block**, the bridge will block traffic to or from the addresses listed in the Control Table.
- **MAC Access Control Table:** Click **Add** to create a new entry. Click **Edit** to change an existing entry. Each entry contains the following field:
  - **MAC Address:** Enter the wireless client’s MAC address.
  - **Comment:** Enter an optional comment such as the client’s name.
- **Status:** The entry is enabled automatically when saved (so the Status field is only visible when editing an entry). You can also disable or delete entries by changing this field’s value.

### ⇒ NOTE

For larger networks that include multiple Access Points, you may prefer to maintain this list on a centralized location using the [MAC Access Control Via RADIUS Authentication](#).

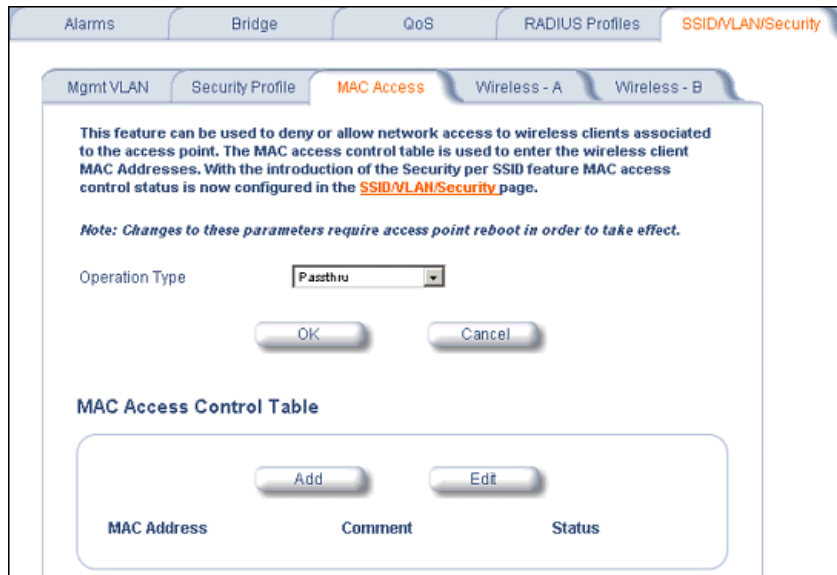


Figure 4-39 MAC Access Configuration Screen

### Wireless-A or Wireless-B

Each SSID/VLAN can have its own Security Profile that defines its security mode, authentication mechanism, and encryption, so that customers can have multiple types of clients (non-WEP, WEP, 802.1x, WPA, 802.11i (WPA2)) on the same system, but separated per VLAN. Refer to the [Security Profile](#) section for more information. These parameters are configurable on the **Wireless-A** or **Wireless-B** sub-tabs.

### Adding or Modifying an SSID/VLAN with VLAN Protocol Disabled

1. Click **SSID/VLAN/Security > Wireless-A** or **Wireless-B**.  
This tab allows you to select the index of the SSID/VLAN to be added or edited. It also allows you to configure the RADIUS Authentication Status, the MAC ACL Status, the Security Profile for the VLAN, the RADIUS Server Profiles, and gives you the option to enable or disable RADIUS accounting and SSID authorization in the VLAN.
2. Scroll down to the SSID and VLAN table, and select the VLAN/SSID and click **Add** to configure additional SSIDs, VLANs, and their associated security profiles and RADIUS server profiles, or click **Edit** to modify an existing VLAN/SSID.

Index	Network Name (SSID)	VLAN ID	QoS Profile	Status
1	My Wireless Network A	untagged	1	Enable

Figure 4-40 SSID and VLAN Table

The **Add Entries** or **Edit Entries** screen appears. See [Figure 4-41](#) and [Figure 4-42](#) on page 101.

**SSID and VLAN Table - Wireless A - Add Entries.**

This page is used to configure additional SSIDs, and VLANs. Each table entry requires a unique SSID and VLAN ID.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

Network name (SSID)

VLAN ID (0-4094, untagged)

QoS Profile

OK Cancel

Figure 4-41 SSID/VLAN Add Entries (VLAN Protocol Disabled)

Alarms Bridge QoS RADIUS Profiles **SSID/VLAN/Security**

←

**SSID and VLAN Table - Wireless A - Edit Entries.**

This page is used to configure additional SSIDs, and VLANs. Each table entry requires a unique SSID and VLAN ID.

*Note: The first table entry cannot be disabled or deleted.*

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

<b>Index</b>	<b>1</b>
Network Name (SSID)	My Wireless Network A
VLAN ID (0-4094, untagged)	untagged
Status	Enable
QoS Profile	1

OK Cancel

**Figure 4-42 SSID/VLAN Edit Entries (VLAN Protocol Disabled)**

3. Enter a unique **Network Name** (SSID) between 1 and 32 characters. This parameter is mandatory.

**NOTE**

Do not use quotation marks (single or double) in the Network Name; this will cause the AP to misinterpret the name.

4. Enter a unique **VLAN ID**. This parameter is mandatory.
  - You must specify a unique VLAN ID for each SSID on the interface. A VLAN ID is a number from -1 to 4094. A value of -1 means that an entry is “untagged.”
  - You can set the VLAN ID to “-1” or “untagged” if you do not want clients that are using a specific SSID to be members of a VLAN workgroup. Only one “untagged” VLAN ID is allowed per interface.
  - The VLAN ID must match an ID used by your network; contact your network administrator if you need assistance defining the VLAN IDs.
5. If editing an entry, enable or disable the VLAN using the **Status** drop-down menu. If adding an entry, this field will not appear.
6. Specify a **QoS profile**. Refer to the [QoS Policies](#) section for more information.
7. Click OK to return to **Wireless-A or Wireless-B Security Configuration** screen. Refer to [Figure 4-43](#).

Mgmt VLAN Security Profile MAC Access **Wireless - A** Wireless - B

### SSID, VLAN, and Security Data Configuration - Wireless A

This page is used to configure multiple SSIDs (Wireless Network Names), VLAN IDs and the associated security profile and RADIUS server profiles. In order for the Security per VLAN and SSID feature to function, VLAN Status must be enabled ([Mgmt VLAN](#)).

The user must specify unique SSIDs and VLAN IDs values (only a single untagged VLAN ID can be configured).

[Security Profiles](#) are used to configure the allowed security modes. If RADIUS MAC, 802.1x, WPA or RADIUS accounting is enabled in the SSID's security profile then the respective [RADIUS server profiles](#) should be configured and assigned to this SSID.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

Enable Security Per SSID

Accounting Status

RADIUS MAC Authentication Status

MAC ACL Status

Rekeying Interval (seconds)

Security Profile

RADIUS MAC Authentication Profile

RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile

RADIUS Accounting Profile

#### SSID and VLAN Data Table

Index	Network Name (SSID)	VLAN ID	QoS Profile	Status
1	My Wireless Network A	untagged	1	Enable

**Figure 4-43 SSID, VLAN, and Security Data Configuration (VLAN Protocol Disabled)**

8. Enable or disable RADIUS accounting on the VLAN/SSID under the **Accounting Status** drop-down menu.
9. Enable or disable RADIUS MAC authentication status on the VLAN/SSID under the **RADIUS Authentication Status** drop-down menu.
10. Enable or disable MAC Access Control List status on the VLAN/SSID under the **MAC ACL Status** drop-down menu.
11. Enter the **Rekeying Interval** in seconds. The default interval is 900 seconds.
12. Enter the **Security Profile** used by the VLAN in the Security Profile field. Refer to the [Security Profile](#) section for more information.

**NOTE**

If you have two or more SSIDs per interface using a security Profile with a security mode of Non Secure, be aware that security being applied in the VLAN is not being applied in the wireless network.

13. Define the **RADIUS Server Profile Configuration** for the VLAN/SSID:

- RADIUS MAC Authentication Profile
- RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile
- RADIUS Accounting Profile

If 802.1x, WPA, or 802.11i (WPA2) security mode is used, the RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile must have a value. A RADIUS Server Profile for authentication for each VLAN shall be configured as part of the configuration options for that VLAN. RADIUS profiles are independent of VLANs. The user can define any profile to be the default and associate all VLANs to that profile. Four profiles are created by default, “MAC Authentication”, “EAP Authentication”, Accounting”, and “Management”.

14. Reboot the AP.

### Adding or Modifying an SSID/VLAN with VLAN Protocol Enabled

1. Click **SSID/VLAN/Security > Wireless-A** or **Wireless-B**.

This tab allows you to select the index of the SSID/VLAN to be added or edited. It also allows you to configure the RADIUS Authentication Status, the MAC ACL Status, the Security Profile for the VLAN, the RADIUS Server Profiles, and gives you the option to enable or disable RADIUS accounting and SSID authorization in the VLAN.

2. Select the **Enable Security Per SSID** option. The screen will update to the following:

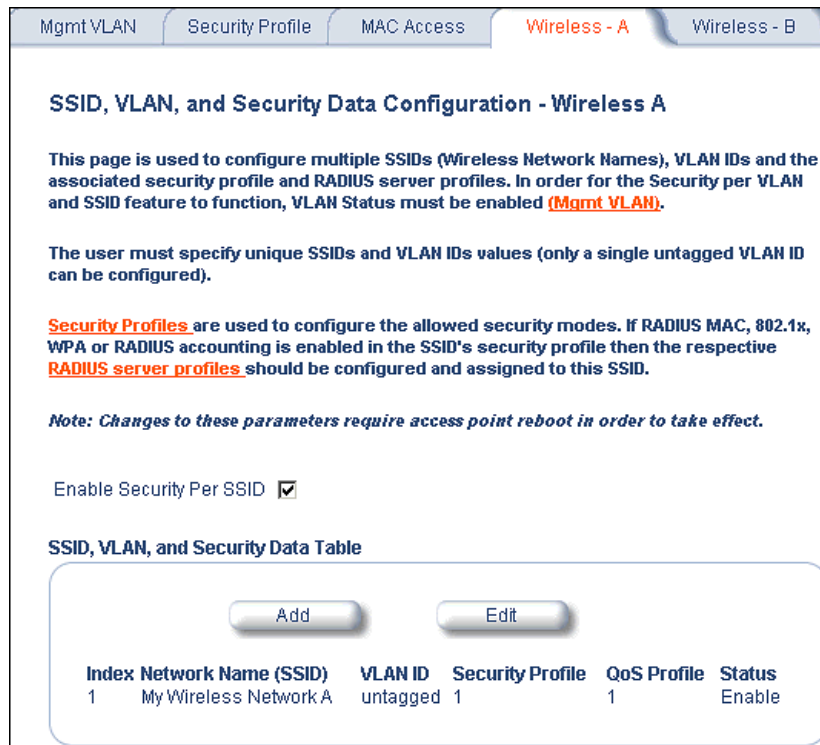


Figure 4-44 SSID/VLAN Configuration (VLAN Protocol Enabled)

3. Click **Add** to configure additional SSIDs, VLANs, and their associated security profiles and RADIUS server profiles, or click **Edit** to modify an existing VLAN/SSID.

The **Add Entries** or **Edit Entries** screen appears. See [Figure 4-45](#) below and [Figure 4-46](#) on page 105.

**SSID, VLAN, and Security Table - Wireless A - Add Entries.**

This page is used to configure additional SSIDs, VLANs, and their associated security profiles and RADIUS server profiles. Each table entry requires a unique SSID, VLAN ID and a valid security profile.

**Security Profiles** are used to configure the allowed security modes. If RADIUS MAC, 802.1x, WPA or RADIUS accounting is enabled in the SSID's security profile then the respective **RADIUS server profiles** should be configured and assigned to this SSID.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

Network name (SSID)	<input type="text"/>
VLAN ID (0-4094, untagged)	<input type="text" value="untagged"/>
SSID Authorization	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
Accounting Status	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
RADIUS MAC Authentication Status	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
MAC ACL Status	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
Rekeying Interval (seconds)	<input type="text" value="900"/>
Security Profile	<input type="text" value="1"/>
RADIUS MAC Authentication Profile	<input type="text"/>
RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile	<input type="text"/>
RADIUS Accounting Profile	<input type="text"/>
QoS Profile	<input type="text"/>

**Figure 4-45 SSID/VLAN Add Entries (VLAN Protocol Enabled)**



**SSID, VLAN, and Security Table - Wireless A - Edit Entries.**

This page is used to configure additional SSIDs, VLANs, and their associated security profiles and RADIUS server profiles. Each table entry requires a unique SSID and VLAN ID.

**Security Profiles** are used to configure the allowed security modes. If RADIUS MAC, 802.1x, WPA or RADIUS accounting is enabled in the SSID's security profile then the respective **RADIUS server profiles** should be configured and assigned to this SSID.

*Note: Changes to these parameters require access point reboot in order to take effect.*

<b>Index</b>	<b>1</b>
Network Name (SSID)	My Wireless Network A
VLAN ID (0-4094, untagged)	untagged
Status	Enable
SSID Authorization	Disable
Accounting Status	Disable
RADIUS MAC Authentication Status	Disable
MAC ACL Status	Disable
Rekeying Interval (seconds)	900
Security Profile	1
RADIUS MAC Authentication Profile	MAC Authentication
RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile	EAP Authentication
RADIUS Accounting Profile	Accounting
QoS Profile	1

**Figure 4-46 SSID/VLAN Edit Entries (VLAN Protocol Enabled)**

- Enter a unique **Network Name** (SSID) between 1 and 32 characters. This parameter is mandatory.

**⇒ NOTE**

Do not use quotation marks (single or double) in the Network Name; this will cause the AP to misinterpret the name.

- Enter a unique **VLAN ID**. This parameter is mandatory.
  - You must specify a unique VLAN ID for each SSID on the interface. A VLAN ID is a number from -1 to 4094. A value of -1 means that an entry is “untagged.”
  - You can set the VLAN ID to “-1” or “untagged” if you do not want clients that are using a specific SSID to be members of a VLAN workgroup. Only one “untagged” VLAN ID is allowed per interface.
  - The VLAN ID must match an ID used by your network; contact your network administrator if you need assistance defining the VLAN IDs.
- If editing an entry, enable or disable the VLAN using the **VLAN Status** drop-down menu. If adding, this drop-down menu will not appear.
- Enable or disable the **SSID Authorization** status from the drop-down menu. SSID Authorization is the RADIUS based authorization of the SSID for a particular client. The authorized SSIDs are sent as the tunnel attributes.
- Enable or disable RADIUS accounting on the VLAN/SSID under the **Accounting Status** drop-down menu.
- Enable or disable RADIUS MAC authentication status on the VLAN/SSID under the **RADIUS Authentication Status** drop-down menu.
- Enable or disable MAC Access Control List status on the VLAN/SSID under the **MAC ACL Status** drop-down menu.
- Enter the **Rekeying Interval** in seconds. The default interval is 900 seconds.
- Enter the Security Profile used by the VLAN in the **Security Profile** field.

 **NOTE**

If you have two or more SSIDs per interface using a security Profile with a security mode of Non Secure, be aware that security being applied in the VLAN is not being applied in the wireless network.

13. Define the **RADIUS Server Profile Configuration** for the VLAN/SSID:

- RADIUS MAC Authentication Profile
- RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile
- RADIUS Accounting Profile

If 802.1x, WPA, or 802.11i (WPA2) security mode is used, the RADIUS EAP Authentication Profile must have a value.

A RADIUS Server Profile for authentication for each VLAN shall be configured as part of the configuration options for that VLAN. RADIUS profiles are independent of VLANs. The user can define any profile to be the default and associate all VLANs to that profile. Four profiles are created by default, "MAC Authentication", "EAP Authentication", "Accounting", and "Management".

14. Specify a **QoS Profile**. Refer to the [QoS Policies](#) section for more information.

15. Reboot the AP.

## Broadcast SSID and Closed System

Broadcast SSID allows the broadcast of a single SSID when the AP is configured for multiple SSIDs. Broadcast SSID may only be enabled for a single SSID. This object can only be configured using the CLI and SNMP using a MIB browser or network management application.

Closed System manages the way probe requests are handled. If enabled, the AP will respond to probe requests with an SSID only if the client has specified the SSID in the probe request. If the client sends a probe request with a null or "ANY" SSID, the AP will respond with a null SSID. If disabled, the AP will respond with each configured SSID, whether or not an SSID has been specified in the probe request. This option is disabled by default.

## 5

## Monitoring the AirSPEED AP542

- **Version:** Provides version information for the Access Point's system components.
- **ICMP:** Displays statistics for Internet Control Message Protocol packets sent and received by the AP.
- **IP ARP Table:** Displays the AP's IP Address Resolution table.
- **Learn Table:** Displays the list of nodes that the AP has learned are on the network.
- **IAPP:** Provides statistics for the Inter-Access Point Protocol messages sent and received by the AP.
- **RADIUS:** Provides statistics for the configured RADIUS server(s).
- **Interfaces:** Displays the Access Point's interface statistics (Wireless and Ethernet).
- **Station Statistics:** Displays statistics for stations and Wireless Distribution System links.

To monitor the AP using the HTTP/HTTPS interface, you must first log in to a web browser. See [Logging into the HTTP Interface](#) for instructions.

You may also monitor the AP using the command line interface. Refer to [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for more information

To monitor the AP via HTTP/HTTPS:

1. Click the **Monitor** button located on the left-hand side of the screen. The main **Monitor** screen will be displayed.

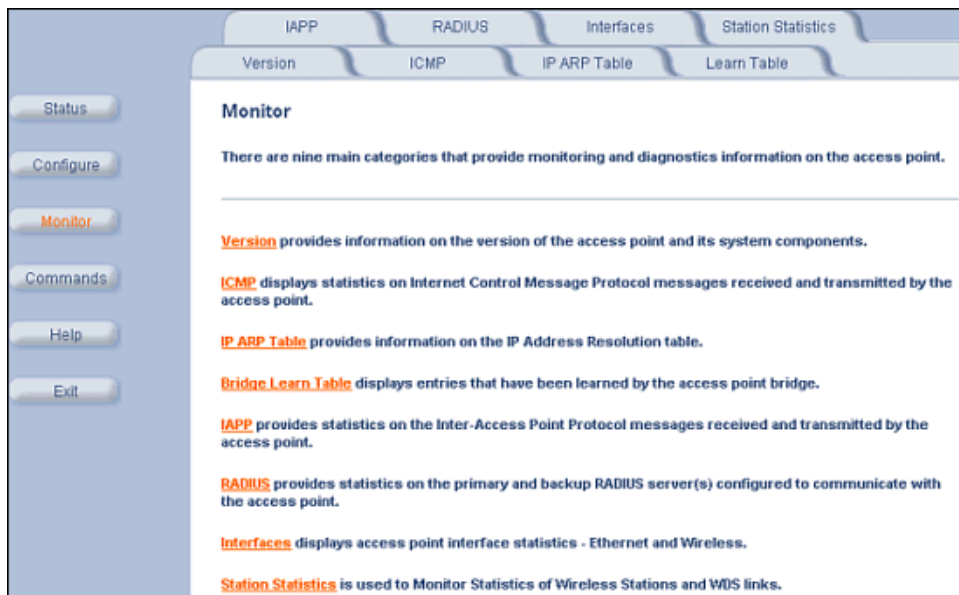



Figure 5-1 Monitor Main Screen

2. Click the tab that corresponds to the statistics you want to review. For example, click **Learn Table** to see the list of nodes that the AP has discovered on the network.
3. If applicable, click the **Refresh**  button to update the statistics.

Each **Monitor** tab is described in the remainder of this chapter.

## Version

From the HTTP interface, click the **Monitor** button and select the **Version** tab. The list displayed provides you with information that may be pertinent when calling Technical Support. With this information, your Technical Support representative can verify compatibility issues and make sure the latest software are loaded. This screen displays the following information for each Access Point component:

- **Serial Number:** The component's serial number, if applicable.
- **Component Name ID:** The AP identifies a system component based on its ID. Each component has a unique identifier.
- **Variant:** Several variants may exist of the same component (for example, a hardware component may have two variants, one with more memory than the other).
- **Version:** Specifies the component's version or build number. The Software Image version is the most useful information on this screen for the typical end use.

This tab displays version information of the access point system components. This information can be used by Technical Support to diagnose incompatibility issues and to determine if updated software or drivers are required and available.

Serial Number	Name	ID	Variant	Version
Not Applicable	Wireless Card A-NIC	4210	3	1.0.0
Not Applicable	Wireless Card B-NIC	4212	2	1.0.0
Not Applicable	AP Software Image	4115	1	2.6.0
04UT17570638	Hardware Inventory	4114	0	0.0.0
Not Applicable	Original Bootloader	4120	1	3.1.0
Not Applicable	Enterprise MIB	122	1	3.71.0
Not Applicable	Configuration File	4116	0	0.1.1
Not Applicable	Upgrade Bootloader	0	0	0.0.0

Figure 5-2 Version Information

## ICMP

This tab provides statistical information for both received and transmitted messages directed to the AP. Not all ICMP traffic on the network is counted in the ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) statistics.



Figure 5-3 ICMP Monitoring

## IP ARP Table

This tab provides information based on the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), which relates MAC Address and IP Addresses.

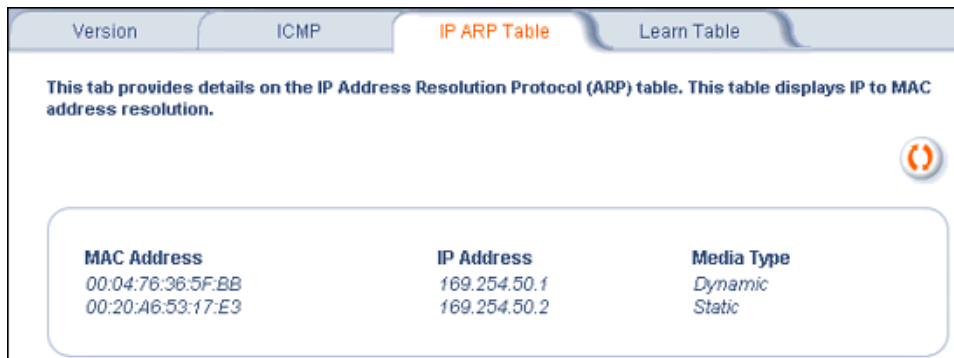
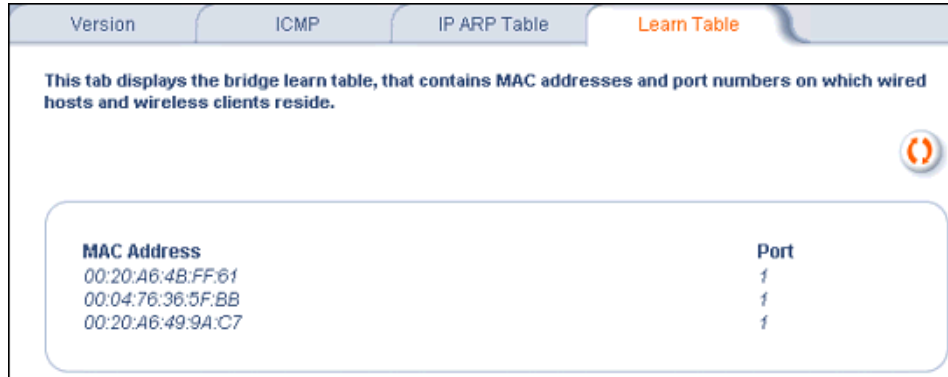


Figure 5-4 IP ARP Table

## Learn Table

This tab displays information relating to network bridging. It reports the MAC address for each node that the device has learned is on the network and the interface on which the node was detected. There can be up to 10,000 entries in the Learn Table.

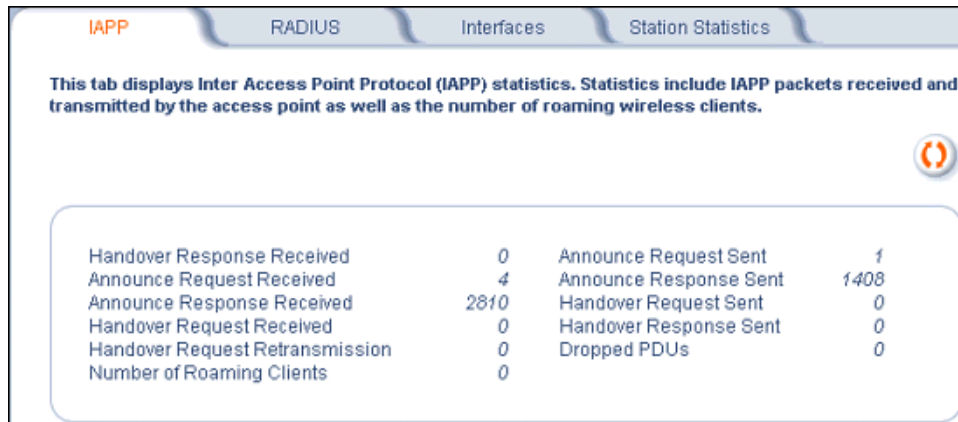


MAC Address	Port
00:20:A6:4B:FF:61	f
00:04:76:36:5F:BB	f
00:20:A6:49:9A:C7	f

Figure 5-5 Learn Table

## IAPP

This tab displays statistics relating to client handovers and communications between AirSPEED Access Points.



Handover Response Received	0	Announce Request Sent	1
Announce Request Received	4	Announce Response Sent	1408
Announce Response Received	2810	Handover Request Sent	0
Handover Request Received	0	Handover Response Sent	0
Handover Request Retransmission	0	Dropped PDUs	0
Number of Roaming Clients	0		

Figure 5-6 IAPP

## RADIUS

This tab provides RADIUS authentication, EAP/802.1x authentication, and accounting information for both the Primary and Backup RADIUS servers for each RADIUS Server Profile.

### ⇒ NOTE

Separate RADIUS servers can be configured for each RADIUS Server Profile.

Select the RADIUS Server Profile to view statistics on from the **Select Server Profile** drop-down menu.

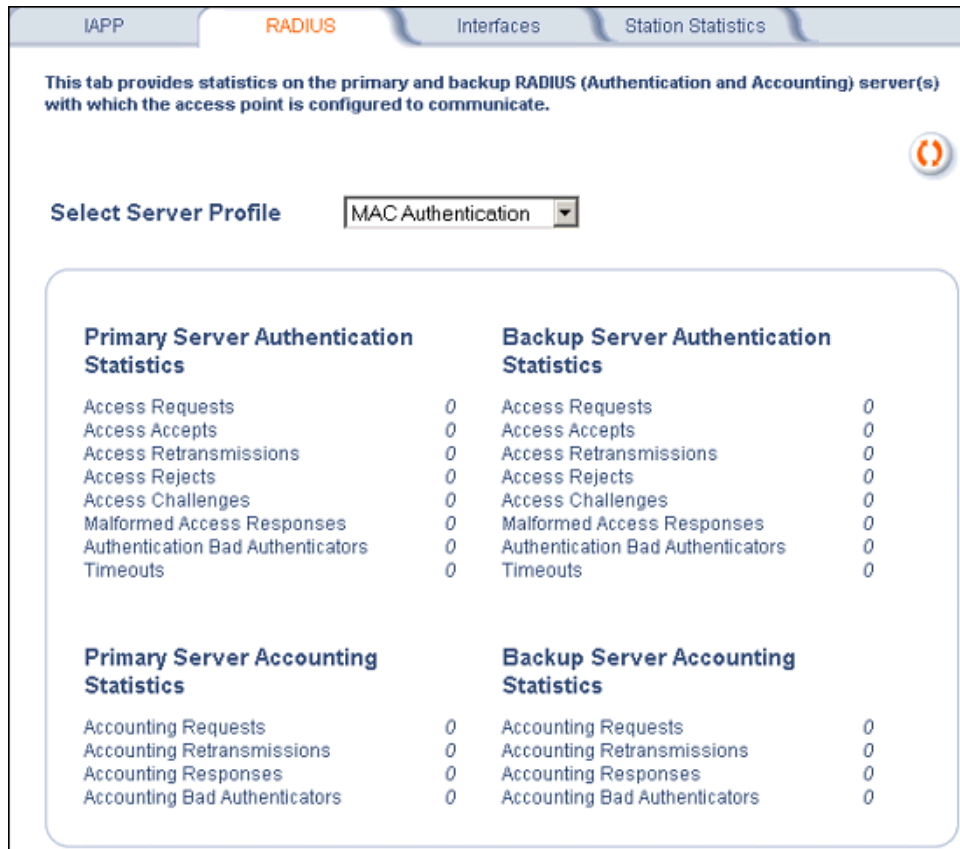


Figure 5-7 RADIUS Monitoring

## Interfaces

This tab displays statistics for the Ethernet and wireless interfaces. The Operational Status can be up, down, or testing.

IAPP	RADIUS	Interfaces	Station Statistics
<p>This tab provides information and statistics on the access point Ethernet interface.</p>			
<p>Ethernet</p>			
Type	ethernet-csmacd		
Description	0.0		
MIB Specific Definition	ae0		
Ethernet Chipset	rtl8201bl		
Physical Address	00:20:A6:53:17:E3		
Last Change	16358000		
Operational Status	Up		
Admin Status	Up		
Speed	100000000		
Maximum Packet Size	1500		
In Octets (bytes)	6033501		
In Unicast Packets	2820		
In Non-unicast Packets	85660		
In Discards	0		
In Errors	0		
Unknown Protocols	7		
Out Octets (bytes)	5411409		
Out Unicast Packets	3636		
Out Non-unicast Packets	35421		
Out Discards	0		
Out Errors	0		
Output Queue Length	10		
Alignment Error	0		
FCS Errors	0		
Single Collision Frames	0		
Multiple Collision Frames	0		
SQE Test Errors	0		
Deferred Transmissions	0		
Late Collisions	0		
Excessive Collisions	0		
Internal MAC Transmit Errors	0		

Figure 5-8 Wireless Interface Monitoring



## Station Statistics

This tab displays information on wireless clients attached to the AP and on Wireless Distribution System links.

### Enabling and Viewing Station Statistics

To enable the monitoring of Stations Statistics, perform the following procedure:

1. Click on the **Monitor** tab on the left on the web page.
2. Click on the **Station Statistics** tab on the **Monitor** screen.
3. Enable the Monitoring Station Statistics feature (Station Statistics are disabled by default) by checking **Enable Monitoring Station Statistics** and click **OK**.

You do not need to reboot the AP for the changes to take effect. If clients are connected to the device or WDS links are configured for the device, the statistics will now be shown on the screen.

### Refreshing Station Statistics

Click on the **Refresh** button in the browser window to view the latest statistics. If any new clients associate to the AP, you can see the statistics of the new clients after you click the refresh button.

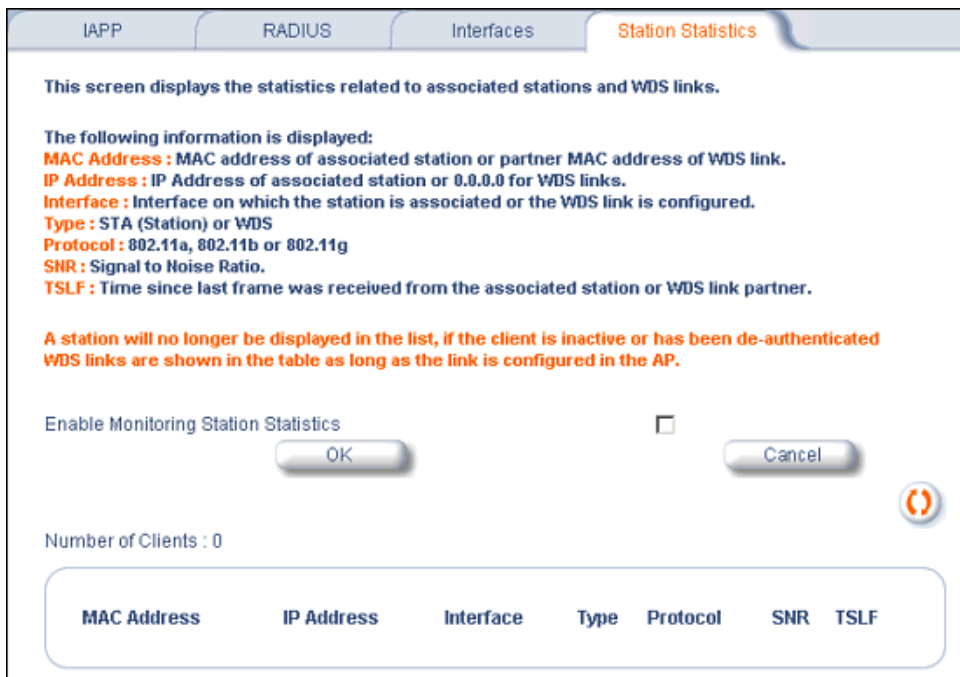


Figure 5-9 Station Statistics

### Description of Station Statistics

The following stations statistics are displayed:

- **MAC Address:** The MAC address of the wireless client for which the statistics are gathered. For WDS links, this is the partner MAC address of the link.
- **IP Address:** The IP address of the associated wireless station for which the Statistics are gathered. (0.0.0.0 for WDS links)
- **Interface:** The interface number on which the client is connected with the AP. For WDS links this is the interface on which the link is configured.
- **Type:** The station type of wireless client (STA or WDS).
- **Protocol:** The MAC protocol for this wireless client (or WDS link partner). The possible values are 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g

- **SNR** (Signal-to-Noise Ratio): The Signal /Noise Level measured at the AP when frames are received from the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner)
- **TLFR** (Time since Last Frame Received): The time elapsed since the last frame from the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) was received.
- **Number of Clients**: The number of stations and WDS links monitored.

The following stations statistics are not displayed in the Graphical User Interface, but can be viewed from a MIB browser:

- **Octets Received**: The number of octets received from the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) by the AP.
- **Unicast Frames Received**: The number of Unicast frames received from the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) by the AP.
- **Non-Unicast Frames Received**: The number of Non-Unicast frames received (i.e. broadcast or multicast) from the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) by the AP.
- **Octets Transmitted**: The number of octets sent to the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) from the AP.
- **Unicast Frames Transmitted**: The number of Unicast frames transmitted to the associated wireless station (or WDS link partner) from the AP.

## 6

## Performing Commands

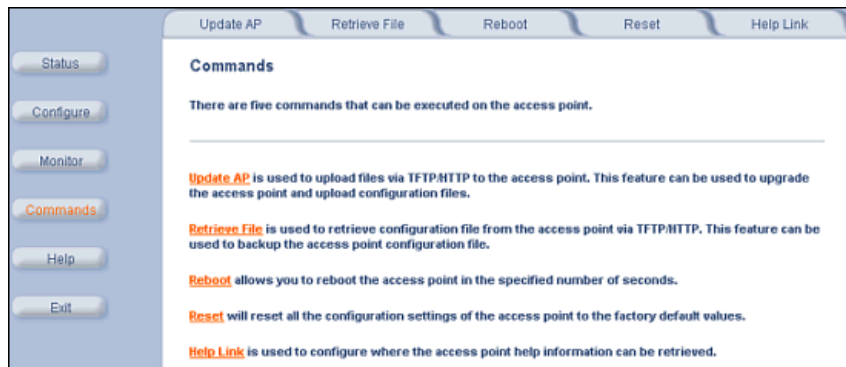
- [Introduction to File Transfer via TFTP or HTTP](#): Describes the available file transfer methods.
- [Update AP](#): Download files to the AP using TFTP or HTTP.
- [Retrieve File](#): Upload files from the AP using TFTP or HTTP.
- [Reboot](#): Reboot the AP in the specified number of seconds.
- [Reset](#): Reset all of the Access Point's configuration settings to factory defaults.
- [Help Link](#): Configure the location where the AP Help files can be found.

To perform commands using the HTTP/HTTPS interface, you must first log in to a web browser. See [Logging into the HTTP Interface](#) for instructions.

You may also perform commands using the command line interface. Refer to [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for more information.

To perform commands via HTTP/HTTPS:

1. Click the **Commands** button located on the left-hand side of the screen. The main **Commands** screen will be displayed.



**Figure 6-1** Commands Main Screen

2. Click the tab that corresponds to the command you want to issue. For example, click **Reboot** to restart the unit. Following a brief introduction to TFTP and HTTP file transfer, each **Commands** tab is described in the remainder of this chapter.

## Introduction to File Transfer via TFTP or HTTP

There are two methods of transferring files to or from the AP: TFTP or HTTP (or HTTPS if enabled):

- Downloading files (Configuration, AP Image, Bootloader, Private Key, and Certificate, CLI) to the AP using one of these two methods is called “Updating the AP.”
- Uploading files (Configuration, CLI) from the AP is called “retrieving files.”

### TFTP File Transfer Guidelines

A TFTP server must be running and configured to point to the directory containing the file.

If you do not have a TFTP server installed on your system, install the TFTP server from the AirSPEED CD-ROM.

### HTTP File Transfer Guidelines

HTTP file transfer can be performed either with or without SSL enabled.

HTTP file transfers with SSL require enabling Secure Management and Secure Socket Layer. HTTP transfers that use SSL may take additional time.

#### NOTE

SSL requires Internet Explorer version 6, 128 bit encryption, Service Pack 1, and patch Q323308.

## Image Error Checking during File Transfer

The Access Point performs checks to verify that an image downloaded through HTTP or TFTP is valid. The following checks are performed on the downloaded image:

- Zero Image size
- Large image size
- Non VxWorks image
- AP image
- Digital signature verification

If any of the above checks fail on the downloaded image, the Access Point deletes the downloaded image and retains the old image. Otherwise, if all checks pass successfully, the AP deletes the old image and retains the downloaded image.

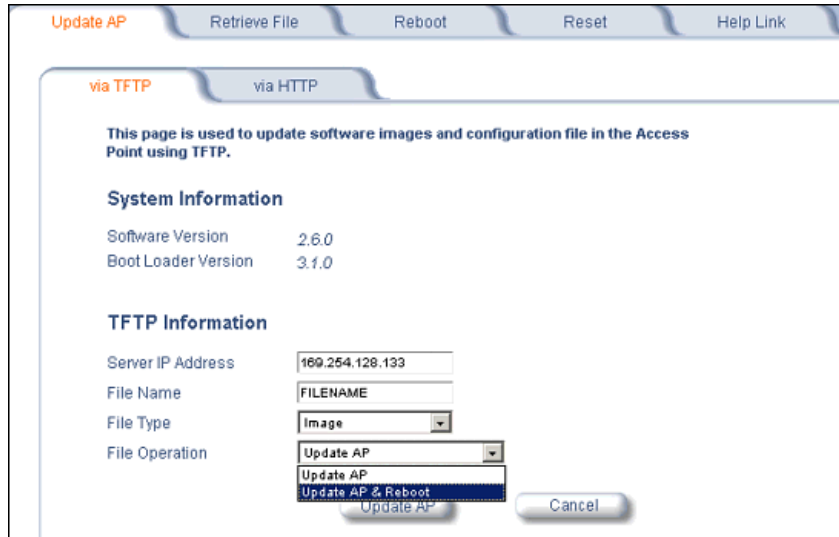
These checks are to ensure that the AP does not enter an invalid image state. The storage of the two images is only temporary to ensure the proper verification; the two images will not be stored in the AP permanently.

Image error checking functions automatically in the background. No user configuration is required.

## Update AP

### Update AP via TFTP

Use the **Update AP via TFTP** tab to download Configuration, AP Image, Bootloader files, and Certificate and Private Key files to the AP. A TFTP server must be running and configured to point to the directory containing the file.



**Figure 6-2 Update AP via TFTP Command Screen**

If you do not have a TFTP server installed on your system, install the TFTP server from the AirSPEED CD-ROM. You can either install the TFTP server from the CD-ROM Wizard or run **OEM-TFTP-Server.exe** found in the CD-ROM's *Xtras/SolarWinds* sub-directory.

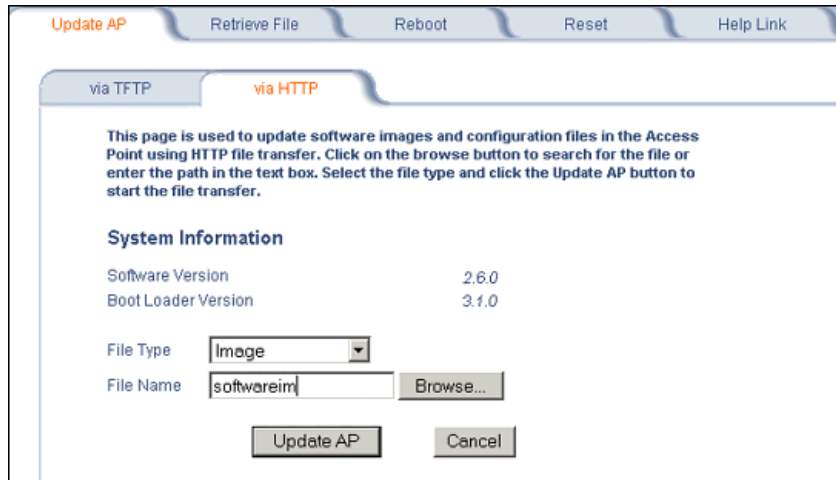
The **Update AP via TFTP** tab shows version information and allows you to enter TFTP information as described below.

- **Server IP Address:** Enter the TFTP server IP Address.
  - Double-click the TFTP server icon on your desktop and locate the IP address assigned to the TFTP server. Note: This is the IP address that will be used to point the Access Point to the AP Image file.
- **File Name:** Enter the name of the file to be downloaded (including the file extension).
  - Copy the updated AP Image file to the TFTP server's root folder. The default AP Image is located at *C:/Program Files/AirSPEED/AP542/*.
- **File Type:** Select the proper file type. Choices include:
  - **Config:** for configuration information, such as System Name, Contact Name, and so on.
  - **Image:** for the AP Image (executable program).
  - **UpgradeBSPBL:** for the Bootloader software.
  - **SSL Certificate:** the digital certificate for authentication in SSL communications.
  - **SSL Private Key:** the private key for encryption in SSL communications.
  - **SSH Public Key:** the public key in SSH communications. Refer to Secure Shell (SSH) for more information.
  - **SSH Private Key:** the private key in SSH communications. Refer to Secure Shell (SSH) for more information.
  - **CLI Batch File:** a CLI Batch file that contains CLI commands to configure the AP. This file will be executed by the AP immediately after being uploaded. Refer to [CLI Batch File](#) for more information.
- **File Operation:** Select either **Update AP** or **Update AP & Reboot**. You should reboot the AP after downloading files.

## Update AP via HTTP

Use the **Update AP via HTTP** tab to download Configuration, AP Image, Bootloader files, and Certificate and Private Key files to the AP.

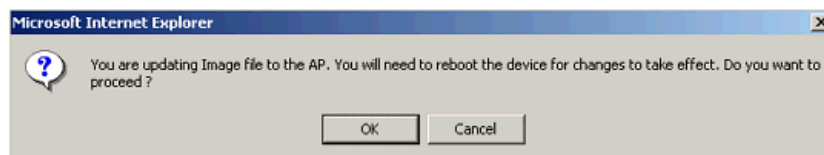
Once on the Update AP screen, click on the **via HTTP** tab.



**Figure 6-3** Update AP via HTTP Command Screen

The **Update AP via HTTP** tab shows version information and allows you to enter HTTP information as described below.

- Select the File Type that needs to be updated from the drop-down box. Choices include:
  - Image:** for the AP Image (executable program).
  - Config:** for configuration information, such as System Name, Contact Name, and so on.
  - SSL Certificate:** the digital certificate for authentication in SSL communications.
  - SSL Private Key:** the private key for encryption in SSL communications.
  - UpgradeBSPBL:** for the Bootloader software.
  - CLI Batch File:** a CLI Batch file that contains CLI commands to configure the AP. This file will be executed by the AP immediately after being uploaded. Refer to [CLI Batch File](#) for more information.
  - SSH Public Key:** the public key in SSH communications. Refer to Secure Shell (SSH) for more information.
  - SSH Private Key:** the private key in SSH communications. Refer to Secure Shell (SSH) for more information.
- Use the **Browse** button or manually type in the name of the file to be downloaded (including the file extension) in the File Name field. If typing the file name, you must include the full path and the file extension in the file name text box.
- To initiate the HTTP Update operation, click the **Update AP** button.  
A warning message is displayed that advises the user that a reboot of the device will be required for changes to take effect.



**Figure 6-4** Warning Message

- Click **OK** to continue with the operation or **Cancel** to abort the operation.

### ➤ NOTE

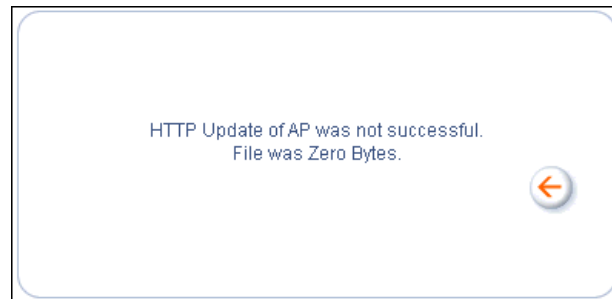
An HTTP file transfer using SSL may take extra time.

If the operation completes successfully the following screen appears.



**Figure 6-5** Update AP Successful Message

If the operation does not complete successfully the following screen appears, and the reason for the failure is displayed.



**Figure 6-6** Update AP Unsuccessful Message

## Retrieve File

### Retrieve File via TFTP

Use the **Retrieve File via TFTP** tab to upload files from the AP to the TFTP server. The TFTP server must be running and configured to point to the directory to which you want to copy the uploaded file. We suggest you assign the file a meaningful name, which may include version or location information.

If you don't have a TFTP server installed on your system, install the TFTP server from the AirSPEED CD-ROM. You can either install the TFTP server from the CD-ROM Wizard or run **OEM-TFTP-Server.exe** found in the CD-ROM's *Xtras/SolarWinds* sub-directory.

The **Retrieve AP via TFTP** tab shows version information and allows you to enter TFTP information as described below.

- **Server IP Address:** Enter the TFTP server IP Address.
  - Double-click the TFTP server icon on your desktop and locate the IP address assigned to the TFTP server.
- **File Name:** Enter the name of the file to be uploaded.
- **File Type:** Select the type of file to be uploaded: Config file, CLI Batch File, or CLI Batch (Error) Log.

Use the following procedure to retrieve a file from an AP to a TFTP server:

1. If retrieving a Config file, configure all the required parameters in their respective tabs. Reboot the device.
2. Retrieve and store the file. Click the **Retrieve File** button to initiate the upload of the file from the AP to the TFTP server.
3. If you retrieved a Configuration file, update the file as necessary.
4. If you retrieved a CLI Batch File or CLI Batch Log, you can examine the file using a standard text editor. For more information on CLI Batch Files, refer to [CLI Batch File](#).

The screenshot shows a web interface for retrieving files from an AP via TFTP. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'Update AP', 'Retrieve File' (highlighted), 'Reboot', 'Reset', and 'Help Link'. Below these, there are two sub-tabs: 'via TFTP' (highlighted) and 'via HTTP'. The main content area has a heading: 'This page is used to retrieve configuration file, latest CLI batch file, and CLI batch file execution log from the Access Point using TFTP'. Underneath, there are two sections: 'System Information' and 'TFTP Information'. 'System Information' lists 'Software Version' as 2.6.0 and 'Boot Loader Version' as 3.1.0. 'TFTP Information' includes a 'Server IP Address' field with the value '199.254.128.133', a 'File Name' field with the placeholder 'FILENAME', and a 'File Type' dropdown menu with options 'Config', 'CLI Batch File', and 'CLI Batch Log'. A 'Cancel' button is located at the bottom right of the form area.

Figure 6-7 Retrieve File via TFTP Command Screen

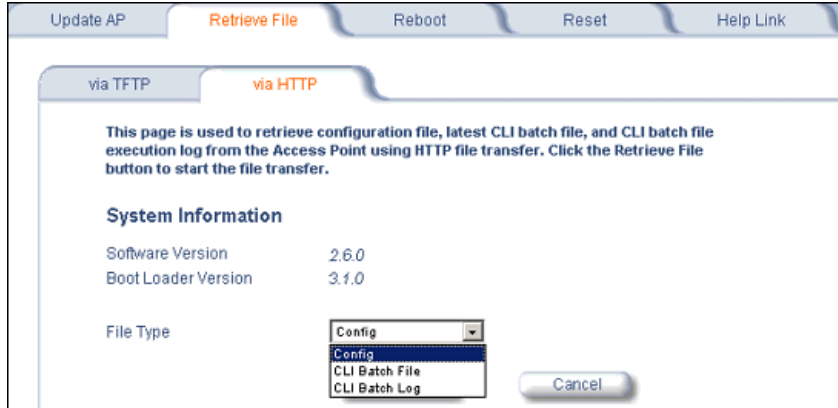


### Retrieve File via HTTP

Use the **Retrieve File via HTTP** tab to retrieve configuration files, CLI Batch Files, or CLI Batch Logs from the AP. Select the type of file (Config, CLI Batch File, or CLI Batch Log) from the **File Type** drop-down menu.

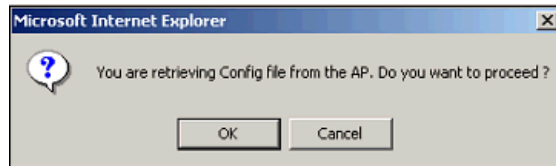
For more information on CLI Batch Files and CLI Batch Logs refer to [CLI Batch File](#).

Click on the **Retrieve File** button to initiate the operation.

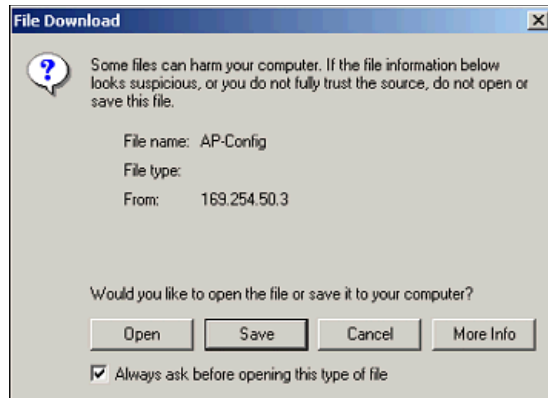


**Figure 6-8 Retrieve File via HTTP Command Screen**

A confirmation message gets displayed that asks if the user wants to proceed with retrieving the file. Click **OK** to continue with the operation or Cancel to abort the operation.



**Figure 6-9 Retrieve File Confirmation Dialog**



**Figure 6-10 File Download Dialog Box**

On clicking the **Save** button the following Save As window displays, where the user is prompted to choose the filename and location where the file is to be downloaded. Select an appropriate filename and location and click **OK**.

## Reboot

Use the **Reboot** tab to save configuration changes (if any) and reset the AP. Entering a value of 0 (zero) seconds causes an immediate reboot. Note that **Reset**, described below, does not save configuration changes.



### CAUTION

Rebooting the AP will cause all users who are currently connected to lose their connection to the network until the AP has completed the restart process and resumed operation.

Update AP   Retrieve File   **Reboot**   Reset   Help Link

This tab is used to reboot the access point by specifying the number of seconds before the next reboot. The access point reboots immediately by entering a value of zero.

*Warning: Rebooting the access point will cause all users who are currently connected to lose their connection to the network until the unit has completed the restart process and resumed operation.*

Please enter the time to reboot (seconds)

Reboot

Figure 6-11 Reboot Command Screen

## Reset

Use the **Reset** tab to restore the AP to factory default conditions. The AP may also be reset from the **RESET** button located on the side of the unit. Since this will reset the Access Point's current IP address, a new IP address must be assigned. Refer to [Recovery Procedures](#) for more information.

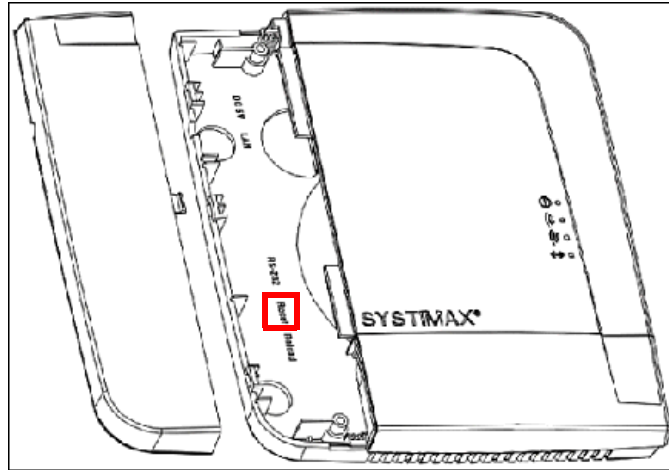


Figure 6-12 Pressing the Reset Button



### CAUTION

Resetting the AP to its factory default configuration will permanently overwrite all changes that have made to the unit. The AP will reboot automatically after this command has been issued.



Figure 6-13 Reset to Factory Defaults Command Screen

## Help Link

To open **Help**, click the **Help** button on any display screen.

During initialization, the AP on-line help files are downloaded to the default location:

**C:/Program Files/AirSPEED/AP542/HTML/.**

### ⇒ NOTE

Use the forward slash character ("/") rather than the backslash character ("\") when configuring the **Help Link** location.

### ⇒ NOTE

Add the AP's management IP address into the Internet Explorer list of Trusted Sites.

If you want to place these files on a shared drive, copy the Help Folder to the new location, and then specify the new path in the **Help Link** box.

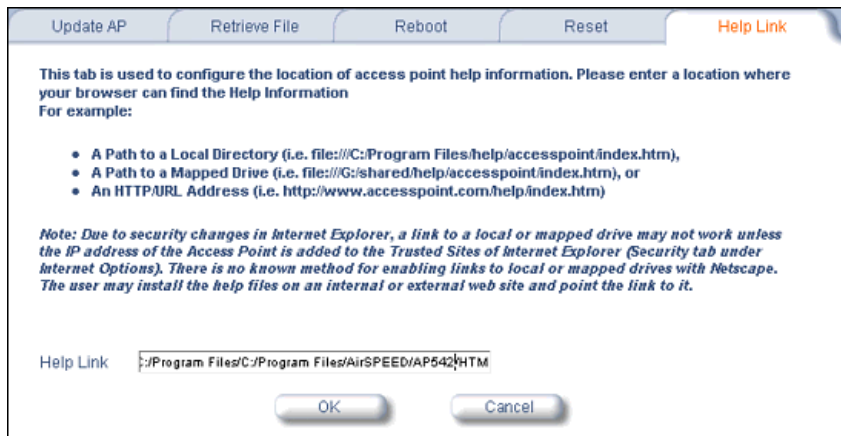


Figure 6-14 Help Link Configuration Screen

# 7

## Troubleshooting the AirSPEED AP542

- [Troubleshooting Concepts](#)
- [Symptoms and Solutions](#)
- [Recovery Procedures](#)
- [Related Applications](#)

### ⇒ NOTE

This section helps you locate problems related to the AP device setup. For details about RADIUS, TFTP, serial communication programs (such as HyperTerminal), Telnet applications, or web browsers, please refer to the documentation that came with the application for assistance.

### Troubleshooting Concepts

The following list identifies important troubleshooting concepts and topics. The most common initialization and installation problems relate to IP addressing. For example, you must have valid IP addresses for both the AP and the management computer to access the unit's HTTP interface.

- **IP Address management is fundamental.**
- **Factory default units are set for “Dynamic” (DHCP) IP Address assignment.** The default IP address for the AP is **169.254.128.132** if your network does not have a DHCP server. If you connect the AP to a network with an active DHCP server, then use ScanTool to locate the IP address of your unit. If a DHCP server is not active on your subnet, then use ScanTool to assign a static IP address to the unit.
- **The Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) provides a means to download and upload files.** These files include the AP Image (executable program) and configuration files.
- **If the AP password is lost or forgotten, you will need to reset to default values.** The [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) resets configuration, but does not change the current AP Image.
- **The AP Supports a Command Line Interface (CLI).** If you are having trouble locating your AP on the network, connect to the unit directly using the serial interface and refer to [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for CLI command syntax and parameter names.
- **ScanTool does not work over routers.** You must be connected to the same subnet/physical LAN segment to use ScanTool. Note that ScanTool also works over the wireless interface; you can run it on a wireless client connected to the target AP or an AP connected to the same LAN segment/subnet.
- **If all else fails...** Use the Forced Reload Procedure to erase the current AP Image and then download a new image. Once the new image is loaded, use the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) to set the unit to factory default values and reconfigure the unit.

## Symptoms and Solutions

### Connectivity Issues

Connectivity issues include any problem that prevents you from powering up or connecting to the AP.

#### AP Unit Will Not Boot - No LED Activity

1. Make sure your power source is operating.
2. Make sure all cables are connected to the AP correctly.

#### Serial Link Does Not Work

1. Make sure you are using a standard, straight-through, 9-pin serial cable.
2. Double-check the physical network connections.
3. Make sure your PC terminal program (such as HyperTerminal) is active and configured to the following values:
  - Com Port: (COM1, COM2, etc. depending on your computer);
  - Baud rate: 9600; Data bits: 8; Stop bits: 1; Flow Control: None; Parity: None;
  - Line Feeds with Carriage Returns  
(In HyperTerminal select:  
**File > Properties > Settings > ASCII Setup > Send Line Ends with Line Feeds**)

#### Ethernet Link Does Not Work

1. Double-check the physical network connections. Use a known-good unit to make sure the network connection is present. Once you have the AP IP address, you can use the “Ping” command over Ethernet to test the IP Address. If the AP responds to the Ping, then the Ethernet Interface is working properly.
2. By default, the Access Point will attempt to automatically detect the Ethernet settings. However, if you are having problems with the Ethernet link, manually configure the Access Point's Ethernet settings. For example, if your switch operates at 100 Mbits/s/Full Duplex, manually configure the Access Point to use these settings (see [Ethernet](#)). If you cannot access the unit over Ethernet, then use the CLI interface over the serial port to configure the Ethernet port (see [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) and [Set Ethernet Speed and Transmission Mode](#)).
3. Perform network infrastructure troubleshooting (check switches, routers, etc.).

## Basic Software Setup and Configuration Problems

### Lost AP, Telnet, or SNMP Password

1. Perform the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) in this guide. This procedure resets system and network parameters, but does not affect the AP Image. The default AP HTTP password is “public”. The default Telnet password and the default SNMP password are also “public”.

### Client Computer Cannot Connect

1. Client computers should have the same Network Name and security settings as the AP.
2. Network Names should be allocated and maintained by the Network Administrator.
3. Refer to the documentation that came with your client card for additional troubleshooting suggestions.

### AP Has Incorrect IP Address

1. Default IP Address Assignment mode is dynamic (DHCP). If you do not have a DHCP server on your network, the default IP Address is **169.254.128.132**. If you have more than one uninitialized AP connected to the network, they will all have the same default IP address and you will not be able to communicate with them (due to an IP address conflict). In this case, assign each AP a static IP address via the serial cable or turn off all units but one and change the IP address using ScanTool one at a time.

2. The AP only contacts a DHCP server during boot-up. If your network's DHCP server is not available while the AP is booting, the device will retain the last IP Address it had. Reboot the AP once your DHCP server is on-line again or use the ScanTool to find the Access Point's current IP address.
3. To find the unit's current IP address if using DHCP, open the IP Client Table in the DHCP Server and match the Access Point's IP address to its MAC address (found on the product label). Alternatively, use ScanTool to identify an Access Point's current IP address.
4. Once you have the current IP address, use the HTTP or CLI Interface to change the unit's IP settings, if necessary.
5. If you use static IP Address assignments, and cannot access the unit over Ethernet, use the [Initializing the IP Address using CLI](#) procedure. Once the IP Address is set, you can use the Ethernet Interface to complete configuration.
6. Perform the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) in this guide. This will reset the unit to "DHCP" mode. If there is a DHCP Server on the network, the DHCP Server will assign an IP Address to the AP.

### HTTP (browser) or Telnet Interface Does Not Work

1. Make sure you are using a compatible browser:
  - Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 with Service Pack 1 or later
  - Netscape 7.1 or later
2. Make sure you have the proper IP address. Enter your Access Point's IP Address in the browser address bar, similar to this example:  
**http://192.168.1.100**  
When the **Enter Network Password** window appears, leave the **User Name** field empty and enter the HTTP password in the **Password** field. The default HTTP password is "public".
3. Use the CLI over the serial port to check the IP Access Table, which can be restricting access to Telnet and HTTP.

### HTML Help Files Do Not Appear

1. Verify that the HTML Help files are installed in the default directory:  
*C:/Program Files/AirSPEED/AP542/HTML/*
2. If the Help files are not located in this folder, contact your network administrator to find out where the Help files are located on your server.
3. Perform the following steps to verify the location or to enter the pathname for the Help files:
  - a. Click the **Commands** button in the HTTP interface.
  - b. Select the **Help** tab located at the top of the screen.
  - c. Enter the pathname where the Help files are located in the **Help Link** box.
  - d. Click **OK** when finished.

### Telnet CLI Does Not Work

1. Make sure you have the proper IP Address. Enter your **AP** IP address in the Telnet connection dialog, from a DOS prompt, type:  
**C:\> telnet <AP IP Address>**
2. Confirm that your computer has an IP address in the same IP subnet as your Access Point.
3. Use the CLI over the serial port to check the IP Access Table, which can be restricting access to Telnet and HTTP.

### TFTP Server Does Not Work

1. Make sure the TFTP Server has been started.
2. Verify the IP address of the TFTP Server. The server may be local or remote, so long as it has a valid IP address.
3. Configure the TFTP Server to "point" to the folder containing the file to be downloaded (or to the folder in which the file is to be uploaded).
4. Verify that you have entered the proper AP Image file name (including the file extension) and directory path.
5. If you have a problem uploading a file, verify that the TFTP server is configured to allow uploads (typically the default setting is to allow only downloads).

## Client Connection Problems

### Client Software Finds No Connection

1. Make sure you have configured your client software with the proper Network Name and Security settings. Network Names and WEP Keys are typically allocated and maintained by your network administrator.

### Client PC Card Does Not Work

1. Make sure you are using the latest PC Card driver software.
2. Download and install the latest client software from your PC Card provider.

### Intermittent Loss of Connection

1. Make sure you are within range of an active AP.
2. You can check the signal strength using the signal strength gauge on your client software.

### Client Does Not Receive an IP Address - Cannot Connect to Internet

1. If the AP is configured as a DHCP server, open the Web-browser Interface and select the **Configure** button and then the **Network** tab to make sure the proper DHCP settings are being used.
2. If you are not using the DHCP server feature on the AP, then make sure that your local DHCP server is accessible from the Access Point's subnet.
3. From the client computer, use the "ping" network command to test the connection with the AP. If the AP responds, but you still cannot connect to the Internet, there may be a physical network configuration problem (contact your network support staff).
4. If using Power over Ethernet, make sure you are not using a crossover Ethernet cable between the AP and the midspan POE device.

## VLAN Operation Issues

### Verifying Proper Operation of the VLAN Feature

The correct VLAN configuration can be verified by "pinging" both wired and wireless hosts from both sides of the AP device and the network switch. Traffic can be "sniffed" on both the wired (Ethernet) and wireless (WDS) backbones (if configured). Bridge frames generated by wireless clients and viewed on one of the backbones should contain IEEE 802.1Q compliant VLAN headers or tags. The VLAN ID in the headers should correspond to one of the VLAN User IDs configured for the AP.

#### **NOTE**

The AirSPEED AP542 supports 16 VLAN/SSID pairs per radio, each with a configured security mode.

### VLAN Workgroups

The correct VLAN assignment can be verified by pinging the AP to ensure connectivity, by pinging the switch to ensure VLAN properties, and by pinging hosts past the switch to confirm the switch is functional. Ultimately, traffic can be "sniffed" on the Ethernet or WDS interfaces (if configured) using third-party packages. Most problems can be avoided by ensuring that 802.1Q compliant VLAN tags containing the proper VLAN ID have been inserted in the bridged frames. The VLAN ID in the header should correspond to the user's assigned network name.

#### **What if network traffic is being directed to a nonexistent host?**

- All sessions are disconnected, traffic is lost, and a manual override is necessary
- Workaround: you can configure the switch to mimic the nonexistent host



**I have just configured the Management ID and now I can't manage the AP?**

- Check to ensure your password is correct. If your password is incorrect or all inbound packets do NOT have the correct tag, then a manual override is necessary.

**CAUTION**

The manual override process disconnects all users and resets all values to factory defaults.

**Power over Ethernet (PoE)****The AP Does Not Work**

1. Verify that you are using a standard UTP minimum Category 5e/6 cable.
2. Try a different port on the same midspan PoE device (remember to move the input port accordingly) – if it works, there is probably a faulty port or a bad RJ45 port connection.
3. If possible, try to connect the AP to a different midspan PoE device.
4. Try using a different Ethernet cable – if it works, there is likely a faulty connection over the horizontal cable, or a bad RJ45 connection.
5. Verify that the midspan PoE device is plugged into an electrical outlet.
6. If the Ethernet link goes down, check the cable, cable type, switch, and midspan PoE device.

**There Is No Data Link**

1. Verify that the indicator for the port is “on.”
2. Verify that the midspan PoE device is connected to the Ethernet network with a data connection.
3. Verify that the Ethernet cable is a minimum Category 5e/6 UTP cable and is less than 100 meters (~325 feet) in length from the Ethernet source to the AP.
4. Try to connect a different device to the same port on the midspan PoE device – if it works and a link is established, there is likely a faulty data link in the AP.
5. Try to re-connect the AP to a different output port (remember to move the input port accordingly) – if it works, there is likely a faulty output or input port in the midspan PoE device or a bad RJ45 connection.

**“Overload” Indications**

1. Verify that you are not using a cross-over cable between the PoE output port and the AP.
2. Verify that there is no short over any of the twisted pair cables.
3. Move the device into a different output port – if it works, there is likely a faulty port or bad RJ45 connection.

**Recovery Procedures**

The most common installation problems relate to IP addressing. For example, without the TFTP server IP Address, you will not be able to download a new AP Image to the AP. IP Address management is fundamental. We suggest you create a chart to document and validate the IP addresses for your system.

If the password is lost or forgotten, you will need to reset the AP to default values. The [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) resets configuration settings, but does not change the current AP Image.

If the AP has a corrupted software image, follow the [Forced Reload Procedure](#) to erase the current AP Image and download a new image.

## Reset to Factory Default Procedure

Use this procedure to reset the network configuration values, including the Access Point's IP address and subnet mask. The current AP Image is not deleted. Follow this procedure if you forget the Access Point's password:

1. Press and hold the **RELOAD** button for 10 seconds.

### **NOTE**

You need to use a pin or the end of a paperclip to press the reboot button on the AP.

Result: The AP reboots, and the factory default network values are restored.

2. If not using DHCP, use the ScanTool or use CLI over a serial connection to set the IP address, subnet mask, and other IP parameters. See [Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)](#) for CLI information.

## Forced Reload Procedure

Use this procedure to erase the current AP Image and download a new AP Image. In some cases, specifically when a missing or corrupted AP Image prevents successful booting, you may need to use ScanTool or the Bootloader CLI to download a new executable AP Image.

### **NOTE**

This does not delete the AP's configuration (in other words, the Forced Reload Procedure does not reset the device to factory defaults). If you need to force the AP to the factory default state after loading a new AP image, use the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#) above.

For this procedure, you will first erase the AP Image currently installed on the unit and then use either ScanTool or the Bootloader CLI (over the serial port) to set the IP address and download a new AP Image. Follow these steps:

1. While the unit is running, press the **RESET** button.

### **NOTE**

You need to use a pin or the end of a paperclip to press the reboot button on the AP.

Result: The AP reboots and the indicators begin to flash.

### **CAUTION**

By completing Step 2, the firmware in the AP will be erased. You will need an Ethernet connection, a TFTP server, and a serial cable (if using the Bootloader CLI) to reload firmware.

2. Press and hold the **RELOAD** button for about 20 seconds until the **POWER LED** turns amber.

Result: The AP deletes the current AP Image.

3. Follow one of the procedures below to load a new AP Image to the Access Point:

- [Download a New Image Using ScanTool](#)
- [Download a New Image Using the Bootloader CLI](#)

## Download a New Image Using ScanTool

To download the AP Image, you will need an Ethernet connection to the computer on which the TFTP server resides and to a computer that is running ScanTool (this is either two separate computers connected to the same network or a single computer running both programs).

ScanTool detects if an Access Point does not have a valid software image installed. In this case, the **TFTP Server** and **Image File Name** parameters are enabled in the ScanTool's **Change** screen so you can download a new image to the unit. (These fields are grayed out if ScanTool does not detect a software image problem.)

### Preparing to Download the AP Image

Before starting, you need to know the Access Point's IP address, subnet mask, the TFTP Server IP Address, and the AP Image file name. Make sure the TFTP server is running and configured to point to the folder containing the image to be downloaded.

### Download Procedure

Follow these steps to use ScanTool to download a software image to an Access Point with a missing image:

1. Download the latest software from <http://www.systimax.com>.
2. Copy the latest software updates to your TFTP server.
3. Launch ScanTool.
4. Highlight the entry for the AP you want to update and click **Change**.
5. Set **IP Address Type** to **Static**.

#### NOTE

You need to assign static IP information temporarily to the Access Point since its DHCP client functionality is not available when no image is installed on the device.

6. Enter an unused IP address that is valid on your network in the **IP Address** field. You may need to contact your network administrator to get this address.
7. Enter the network's **Subnet Mask** in the field provided.
8. Enter the network's **Gateway IP Address**, if necessary. You may need to contact your network administrator to get this address. You should only need to enter the default gateway address (169.254.128.133) if the Access Point and the TFTP server are separated by a router.
9. Enter the IP address of your TFTP server in the field provided.
10. Enter the **Image File Name** (including the file extension). Enter the full directory path and file name. If the file is located in the default TFTP directory, you need enter only the file name.
11. Click **OK**.
  - Result: The Access Point will reboot and the download will begin automatically. You should see downloading activity begin after a few seconds within the TFTP server's status screen.
12. Click **OK** when prompted that the device has been updated successfully to return to the **Scan List** screen.
13. Click **Cancel** to close the ScanTool.
14. When the download process is complete, configure the AP as described in [Getting Started](#) and [Performing Advanced Configuration](#).

## Download a New Image Using the Bootloader CLI

To download the AP Image, you will need an Ethernet connection to the computer on which the TFTP server resides. This can be any computer on the LAN or connected to the AP with a cross-over Ethernet cable.

You must also connect the AP to a computer with a standard serial cable and use a terminal client, such as HyperTerminal. From the terminal, enter CLI Commands to set the IP address and download an AP Image.

### Preparing to Download the AP Image

Before starting, you need to know the Access Point's IP address, subnet mask, the TFTP Server IP Address, and the AP Image file name. Make sure the TFTP server is running and configured to point to the folder containing the image to be downloaded.

### Download Procedure

1. Download the latest software from <http://www.systemax.com>.
2. Copy the latest software updates to your TFTP server's default directory.
3. Use a straight-through serial cable to connect the Access Point's serial port to your computer's serial port.
4. Open your terminal emulation program (like HyperTerminal) and set the following connection properties:
  - Com Port: <COM1, COM2, etc., depending on your computer>
  - Baud rate: 9600
  - Data Bits: 8
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow Control: None
  - Parity: None
5. Under **File > Properties > Settings > ASCII Setup**, enable the **Send line ends with line feeds** option.  
Result: HyperTerminal sends a line return at the end of each line of code.
6. Press the **RESET** button on the AP.  
Result: The terminal display shows Power On Self Tests (POST) activity. After approximately 30 seconds, a message indicates: **Sending Traps to SNMP manager periodically**. After this message appears, press the **ENTER** key repeatedly until the following prompt appears:  
[Device name]>

7. Enter only the following statements:

```
[Device name]> set ipaddrtype static
[Device name]> set ipaddr <Access Point IP Address>
[Device name]> set ipsubmask <IP Mask>
[Device name]> set tftpipaddr <TFTP Server IP Address>
[Device name]> set tftpfilename <AP Image File Name, including file extension>
[Device name]> set ipgw <Gateway IP Address>
[Device name]> show ip (to confirm your new settings)
[Device name]> show tftp (to confirm your new settings)
[Device name]> reboot 0
```

Example:

```
[Device name]> set ipaddrtype static
[Device name]> set ipaddr 10.0.0.12
[Device name]> set ipsubmask 255.255.255.0
[Device name]> set tftpipaddr 10.0.0.20
[Device name]> set tftpfilename MyImage.bin
[Device name]> set ipgw 10.0.0.30
[Device name]> show ip
[Device name]> show tftp
[Device name]> reboot 0
```

Result: The AP will reboot and then download the image file. You should see downloading activity begin after a few seconds within the TFTP server's status screen.

8. When the download process is complete, configure the AP as described in [Getting Started](#) and [Performing Advanced Configuration](#).

## Setting IP Address using Serial Port

Use the following procedure to set an IP address over the serial port using the CLI. The network administrator typically provides the AP IP address.

### Hardware and Software Requirements

- Standard straight-through serial data (RS-232) cable with a one male DB-9 connector and one female DB-9 connector. The AP comes with a female 9-pin serial port.
- ASCII Terminal software, such as HyperTerminal.

### Attaching the Serial Port Cable

1. Connect one end of the serial cable to the AP and the other end to a serial port on your computer.
2. Power on the computer and AP, if necessary.

### Initializing the IP Address using CLI

After installing the serial port cable, you may use the CLI to communicate with the AP. CLI supports most generic terminal emulation programs, such as HyperTerminal (which is included with the Windows operating systems). In addition, many web sites offer shareware or commercial terminal programs you can download. Once the IP address has been assigned, you can use the HTTP interface or the CLI over Telnet to complete configuration.

Follow these steps to assign the AP an IP address:

1. Open your terminal emulation program (like HyperTerminal) and set the following connection properties:
  - Com Port: <COM1, COM2, etc., depending on your computer>
  - Baud rate: 9600
  - Data Bits: 8
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow Control: None
  - Parity: None
2. Under **File > Properties > Settings > ASCII Setup**, enable the **Send line ends with line feeds** option.  
Result: HyperTerminal sends a line return at the end of each line of code.
3. Press the **RESET** button on the AP.  
Result: The terminal display shows Power On Self Tests (POST) activity, and then displays a CLI prompt, similar to the example below. This process may take up to 90 seconds.  
[Device name]> Please enter password:
4. Enter the CLI password (default is **public**).  
Result: The terminal displays a welcome message and then the CLI Prompt:  
[Device name]>
5. Enter **show ip**. Result: Network parameters appear:

```
[Device Name]> show ip
IP/Network Group Parameters
=====
ipaddr      :      10.0.0.1
ipsubmask   :      255.0.0.0
ipgw        :      10.0.0.1
ipttl       :      64
ipaddrtype  :      static
[Device Name]> _
```

Figure 7-1 Result of “show ip” CLI Command

6. Change the IP address and other network values using **set** and **reboot** CLI commands, similar to the example below (use your own IP address and subnet mask). Note that IP Address Type is set to Dynamic by default. If you have a DHCP server on your network, you should not need to manually configure the Access Point’s IP address; the Access Point will obtain an IP address from the network’s DHCP server during boot-up.  
Result: After each entry the CLI reminds you to reboot; however wait to reboot until all commands have been entered.  
[Device name]> **set ipaddrtype static**  
[Device name]> **set ipaddr <IP Address>**  
[Device name]> **set ipsubmask <IP Subnet Mask>**  
[Device name]> **set ipgw <Default Gateway IP Address>**  
[Device name]> **show ip** (to confirm your new settings)  
[Device name]> **reboot 0**
7. After the AP reboots, verify the new IP address by reconnecting to the CLI and enter a **show ip** command. Alternatively, you can ping the AP from a network computer to confirm that the new IP address has taken effect.
8. When the proper IP address is set, use the HTTP interface or CLI over Telnet to configure the rest of the unit’s operating parameters.

## Related Applications

### RADIUS Authentication Server

If you enabled RADIUS Authentication on the AP, make sure that your network's RADIUS servers are operational. Otherwise, clients will not be able to log in. There are several reasons the authentication server services might be unavailable, here are two typical things to check:

- Make sure you have the proper RADIUS authentication server information setup configured in the AP. Check the RADIUS Authentication Server's Shared Secret and Destination Port number (default is 1812; for RADIUS Accounting, the default is 1813).
- Make sure the RADIUS authentication server RAS setup matches the AP.

### TFTP Server

The "Trivial File Transfer Protocol" (TFTP) server allows you to transfer files across a network. You can upload configuration files from the AP for backup or copying, and you can download configuration files or new software images. The TFTP software is located on the AirSPEED AP Installation CD-ROM.

If a TFTP server is not configured and running, you will not be able to download and upload images and configuration files to/from the AP. Remember that the TFTP server does not have to be local, so long as you have a valid TFTP IP address. Note that you do not need a TFTP server running unless you want to transfer files to or from the AP.

After the TFTP server is installed:

- Check to see that TFTP is configured to point to the directory containing the AP Image.
- Make sure you have the proper TFTP server IP Address, the proper AP Image file name, and that the TFTP server is connected.
- Make sure the TFTP server is configured to both send and receive, with no time-out.



## Using the Command Line Interface (CLI)

This section describes the AP's Command Line (CLI) Interface. CLI commands can be used to initialize, configure, and manage the Access Point.

- CLI commands may be entered in real time through a keyboard or submitted with CLI scripts.
- The CLI is available through both the Serial Port interface and over the Ethernet interface using Telnet.
- A *CLI Batch file* is a user-editable configuration file that provides a user-friendly way to change the AP configuration through a file upload. The CLI Batch file is an ASCII file that facilitates Auto Configuration because it does not require the user to access one of the AP's management interfaces to make configuration changes.

### NOTE

All CLI commands and parameters are case-sensitive.

- [General Notes](#)
- [Command Line Interface \(CLI\) Variations](#)
- [CLI Command Types](#)
- [Using Tables & User Strings](#)
- [Configuring the AP using CLI commands](#)
- [Set Basic Configuration Parameters using CLI Commands](#)
- [Other Network Settings](#)
- [CLI Monitoring Parameters](#)
- [Parameter Tables](#)
- [CLI Batch File](#)

## General Notes

### Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge

To use this document effectively, you should have a working knowledge of Local Area Networking (LAN) concepts, network access infrastructures, and client-server relationships. In addition, you should be familiar with software setup procedures for typical network operating systems and servers.

### Notation Conventions

- Computer prompts are shown as constant width type. For example: `[Device-Name]>`
- Information that you input as shown is displayed in bold constant width type. For example:  
`[Device name]> set ipaddr 10.0.0.12`
- The names of keyboard keys, software buttons, and field names are displayed in bold type. For example: Click the **Configure** button.
- Screen names are displayed in bold italics. For example, the ***System Status*** screen.

### Important Terminology

- Configuration Files - Database files containing the current Access Point configuration. Configuration items include the IP Address and other network-specific values. Configuration files may be downloaded to the Access Point or uploaded for backup or troubleshooting.



- Download vs. Upload - Downloads transfer files to the Access Point. Uploads transfer files from the Access Point. The TFTP server performs file transfers in both directions.
- Group - A logical collection of network parameter information. For example, the System Group is composed of several related parameters. Groups can also contain Tables. All items for a given Group can be displayed with a **show <Group>** CLI Command.
- Image File - The Access Point software executed from RAM. To update an Access Point you typically download a new Image File. This file is often referred to as the "AP Image".
- Parameter - A fundamental network value that can be displayed and may be changeable. For example, the Access Point must have a unique IP Address and the Wireless interface must be assigned an SSID. Change parameters with the CLI **set** Command, and view them with the CLI **show** Command.
- Table - Tables hold parameters for several related items. For example, you can add several potential managers to the SNMP Table. All items for a given Table can be displayed with a **show <Table>** CLI Command.
- TFTP - Refers to the TFTP Server, used for file transfers.

## Navigation and Special Keys

This CLI supports the following navigation and special key functions to move the cursor along the prompt line.

Key Combination	Operation
Delete or Backspace	Delete previous character
Ctrl-A	Move cursor to beginning of line
Ctrl-E	Move cursor to end of line
Ctrl-F	Move cursor forward one character
Ctrl-B	Move cursor back one character
Ctrl-D	Delete the character the cursor is on
Ctrl-U	Delete all text to left of cursor
Ctrl-P	Go to the previous line in the history buffer
Ctrl-N	Go to the next line in the history buffer
Tab	Complete the command line
?	List available commands

## CLI Error Messages

The following table describes the error messages associated with improper inputs or expected CLI behavior.

Error Message	Description
Syntax Error	Invalid syntax entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Command	A non-existent command has been entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Parameter Name	An invalid parameter name has been entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Parameter Value	An invalid parameter value has been entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Table Index	An invalid table index has been entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Table Parameter	An invalid table parameter has been entered at the command prompt.
Invalid Table Parameter Value	An invalid table parameter value has been entered at the command prompt.
Read Only Parameter	User is attempting to configure a read-only parameter.
Incorrect Password	An incorrect password has been entered in the CLI login prompt.
Download Unsuccessful	The download operation has failed due to incorrect TFTP server IP Address or file name.
Upload Unsuccessful	The upload operation has failed due to incorrect TFTP server IP Address or file name.

## Command Line Interface (CLI) Variations

Administrators use the CLI to control Access Point operation and monitor network statistics. The AP supports two types of CLI: the Bootloader CLI and the normal CLI. The Bootloader CLI provides a limited command set, and is used when the current AP Image is bad or missing. The Bootloader CLI allows you to assign an IP Address and download a new image. Once the image is downloaded and running, the Access Point uses the normal CLI. This guide covers the normal CLI unless otherwise specified.

## Bootloader CLI

The Bootloader CLI is a minimal subset of the normal CLI used to perform initial configuration of the AP. This interface is only accessible via the serial interface if the AP does not contain a software image or if a download image command over TFTP has failed.

The Bootloader CLI provides you with the ability to configure the initial setup parameters as well as download a software image to the device.

The following functions are supported by the Bootloader CLI:

- **set** command to configure initial device parameters
- **show** command to view the device's configuration parameters
- **help** command to provide additional information on all commands supported by the Bootloader CLI
- **reboot** command to reboot the device

The parameters supported by the Bootloader CLI (for viewing and modifying) are:

- System Name
- IP Address Assignment Type
- IP Address
- IP Mask
- Gateway IP Address
- TFTP Server IP Address
- Image File Name (including the file extension)

The following lists display the results of using the **help** command in the Bootloader CLI:

```
[bootloader] : help
Bootloader Commands
=====
help <cr>                Display this message
reboot <cr>             Reboots the wireless device
set <parameter> <value> <cr> Change the value of the specified parameter
                           to the value provided
show <opt. parameter> <cr> Display the current value of the specified
                           system parameter, or if none is specified,
                           display the values of all the system parameters

The system parameters are :

System Parameters      Description
=====
sysname               System Name
ipaddr                System IP Address
ipsubmask             System Subnet Mask
ipgw                  Default Gateway IP Address
ipaddrtype            STATIC or DYNAMIC IP Address
tftpipaddr            TFTP Server IP Address
tftpfilename          Image or Binary File name

A special option of the set command will reset the system to its
factory defaults:

set sysresettodefaults 1
```

**Figure A-1 Results of “help” Bootloader CLI Command**

The following lists display the results of using the **show** command in the Bootloader CLI:

```
[bootloader] : show
sysname       : bootloader          | System Name
ipaddr        : 169.254.128.132     | System IP Address
ipsubmask     : 255.255.0.0         | System Subnet Mask
ipgw          : 169.254.128.133     | Default Gateway IP Address
ipaddrtype    : dynamic            | STATIC or DYNAMIC IP Address
tftpipaddr    : 169.254.128.133    | TFTP Server IP Address
tftpfilename  : filename           | Image or Binary File name
```

**Figure A-2 Results of “show” Bootloader CLI Command**

## CLI Command Types

This guide divides CLI Commands into two categories: Operational and Parameter Controls.

### Operational CLI Commands

These commands affect Access Point behavior, such as downloading and rebooting. After entering commands (and parameters, if any) press the **Enter** key to execute the Command Line.

Operational commands include:

- **?**: Typing a question mark lists CLI Commands or parameters, depending on usage (you do not need to press **Enter** after typing this command)
- **done, exit, quit**: Terminates the CLI session
- **download**: Uses a TFTP server to download image files, config files, bootloader upgrade files, SSL certificates, SSL private keys, SSH public keys, SSH private keys, or CLI Batch files to the Access Point
- **help**: Displays general CLI help information or command help information, such as command usage and syntax
- **history**: Remembers commands to help avoid re-entering complex statements
- **passwd**: Sets the Access Point's CLI password
- **reboot**: Reboots the Access Point in the specified time
- **search**: Lists the parameters in a specified Table
- **upload**: Uses TFTP server to upload "config" files from Access Point to TFTP default directory or specified path

### ? (List Commands)

This command can be used in a number of ways to display available commands and parameters.

The following table lists each operation and provides a basic example. Following the table are detailed examples and display results for each operation.

Operation	Basic Example
Display the Command List (Example 1)	[Device-Name]>?
Display commands that start with specified letters (Example 2)	[Device-Name]>s?
Display parameters for set and show Commands (Examples 3a and 3b)	[Device-Name]>set ? [Device-Name]>show ipa?
Prompt to enter successive parameters for Commands (Example 4)	[Device-Name]>download ?

#### Example 1. Display Command list

To display the Command List, enter ?.

[Device-Name]>?

```
[Device-Name]>
show
set
download
upload
reboot
passwd
help
quit
done
exit
history
search
[Device-Name]>
```

Figure A-3 Result of "?" CLI Command

**Example 2. Display specific Commands**

To show all commands that start with specified letters, enter one or more letters, then ? with no space between letters and ?.

```
[Device-Name]>s?
```

```
[Device-Name]> s
show          set          search
```

**Figure A-4** Result of “s?” CLI Command

**Example 3. Display parameters for set and show**

Example 3a allows shows every possible parameter for the set (or show) commands. Notice from Example 3a that the list is very long. Example 3b shows how to display a subset of the parameters based on initial parameter letters.

**Example 3a. Display every parameter that can be changed**

```
[Device-Name]>set ?
```

```
[Device-Name]> set
autoconfigstatus
autoconfigfilename
autoconfigftpaddr
bcastbeaconssid
bridgeagingtime
.
.
.
txpowercontrol
wifssidtbl
qosldtolptbl
qosldtodscptbl
qosedcatbl
qospolicytbl
qosqapedcatbl
wdssectbl
vlanmgmtid
vlanstatus
wdstbl
wif
```

**Figure A-5** Result of “set ?” CLI Command

**Example 3b. Display parameters based on letter sequence**

This example shows entries for parameters that start with the letter “i”. The more letters you enter, the fewer the results returned. Notice that there is no space between the letters and the question mark.

```
[Device-Name]> show ipa?
```

```
[Device-Name]> show ipa
ipaddr          ipaddrtype          iparp
iparpfltipaddr  iparpfltstatus      iparpfltsubmask
```

**Figure A-6** Result of “show ipa?” CLI Command

```
[Device-Name]> show iparp?
```

```
[Device-Name]> show iparp
iparp          iparpfltipaddr      iparpfltstatus
iparpfltsubmask
```

**Figure A-7** Result of “show iparp?” CLI Command

#### Example 4. Display Prompts for Successive Parameters

Enter the command, a space, and then ?. Then, when the parameter prompt appears, enter the parameter value. Result: The parameter is changed and a new CLI line is echoed with the new value (in the first part of the following example, the value is the IP Address of the TFTP server).

After entering one parameter, you may add another ? to the new CLI line to see the next parameter prompt, and so on until you have entered all of the required parameters. The following example shows how this is used for the **download** Command. The last part of the example shows the completed **download** Command ready for execution.

```
[Device-Name]> download ?  
<TFTP IP Address>  
[Device-Name]> download 192.168.0.101 ?  
<File Name>  
[Device-Name]> download 192.168.0.101 apimage ?  
<file type (config/img/bootloader)>  
[Device-Name]> download 192.168.0.101 apimage img <CR>
```

#### done, exit, quit

Each of the following commands ends a CLI session:

```
[Device-Name]> done  
[Device-Name]> exit  
[Device-Name]> quit
```

#### download

Downloads the specified file from a TFTP server to the Access Point. Executing **download** in combination with the asterisks character (“\*”) will make use of the previously set TFTP parameters. Executing **download** without parameters will display command help and usage information.

1. Syntax to download a file:  
Device-Name]>**download** <tftp server address> <path and filename> <file type>

Example:

```
[Device-Name]>download 192.168.1.100 APImage2 img
```

2. Syntax to display help and usage information:  
[Device-Name]>**download**
3. Syntax to execute the **download** Command using previously set (stored) TFTP Parameters:  
[Device-Name]>**download** \*

#### help

Displays instructions on using control-key sequences for navigating a Command Line and displays command information and examples.

1. Using **help** as the only argument:  
[Device-Name]>**help**

```

[Device-Name]> help
Type ? at the command prompt for a command list.

Complete command description and command usage can be provided by:
help <command name> <CR>
<command name> help <CR>

Special keys supported:
Arrow Keys

DEL, BS .... delete previous character
Ctrl-A .... go to beginning of line
Ctrl-E .... go to end of line
Ctrl-F .... go forward one character
Ctrl-B .... go backward one character
Ctrl-D .... delete current character
Ctrl-U, X .. delete to beginning of line
Ctrl-K .... delete to end of line
Ctrl-W ..... delete previous word
Ctrl-T ..... transpose previous character
Ctrl-P .... go to previous line in history buffer
Ctrl-N .... go to next line in history buffer

Tab      .... will attempt command completion
# .... Comment Character
?       .... will provide command listing

Examples:
'?'          list all the supported commands
'sh?'       list all commands that start with sh
'show ?'    list all arguments to the show command
'sh<TAB>'   complete the 'show' command

```

**Figure A-8 Results of “help” CLI Command**

- Complete command description and command usage can be provided by:

```

[Device-Name]>help <command name>
[Device-Name]><command name> help

```

## history

Shows content of Command History Buffer. The Command History Buffer stores command statements entered in the current session. To avoid re-entering long command statements, use the keyboard “up arrow” (Ctrl-P) and “down arrow” (Ctrl-N) keys to recall previous statements from the Command History Buffer. When the desired statement reappears, press the **Enter** key to execute, or you may edit the statement before executing it.

```
[Device-Name]> history
```

## passwd

Changes the CLI Password.

```
[Device-Name]> passwd oldpassword newpassword newpassword
```

## reboot

Reboots Access Point after specified number of seconds. Specify a value of 0 (zero) for immediate reboot.

```

[Device-Name]> reboot 0
[Device-Name]> reboot 30

```

## search

Lists the parameters supported by the specified table. This list corresponds to the table information displayed in the HTTP interface. In this example, the CLI returns the list of parameters that make up an entry in the IP Access Table.

```
[Device-Name]> search mgmtipaccesstbl
```

```
[Device-Name]> search mgmtipaccesstbl
The supported elements are:
index
ipaddr
ipmask
cmt
status
```

Figure A-9 Results of “search mgmtipaccesstbl” CLI Command

## upload

Uploads a text-based configuration file from the AP to the TFTP Server. Executing **upload** with the asterisk character (“\*”) will make use of the previously set/stored TFTP parameters. Executing **upload** without parameters will display command help and usage information.

1. Syntax to upload a file:

```
[Device-Name]>upload <tftp server address> <path and filename> <filetype>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]>upload 192.168.1.100 APconfig.sys config
```

2. Syntax to display help and usage information:

```
[Device-Name]>help upload
```

3. Syntax to execute the upload command using previously set (stored) TFTP Parameters:

```
[Device-Name]>upload *
```

## Parameter Control Commands

The following sections cover the two Parameter Control Commands (**show** and **set**) and include several tables showing parameter properties. These commands allow you to view (**show**) all parameters and statistics and to change (**set**) parameters.

- **show:** To see any Parameter or Statistic value, you can specify a single parameter, a Group, or a Table.
- **set:** Use this CLI Command to change parameter values. You can use a single CLI statement to modify Tables, or you can modify each parameter separately.

### “show” CLI Command

Displays the value of the specified parameter, or displays all parameter values of a specified group (parameter table). Groups contain Parameters and Tables. Tables contain parameters for a series of similar entities.

To see a definition and syntax example, type only **show** and then press the **Enter** key. To see a list of available parameters, enter a question mark (?) after **show** (example: **show ?**).

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>show <parameter>
```

```
[Device-Name]>show <group>
```

```
[Device-Name]>show <table>
```

Examples:

```
[Device-Name]>show ipaddr
```

```
[Device-Name]>show network
```

```
[Device-Name]>show mgmtipaccesstbl
```

## “set” CLI Command

Sets (modifies) the value of the specified parameter. To see a definition and syntax example, type only **set** and then press the **Enter** key. To see a list of available parameters, enter a space, then a question mark (?) after **set** (example: **set?**).

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>set <parameter> <value>  
[Device-Name]>set <table> <index> <argument 1> <value 1> ... <argument N> <value N>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]>set sysloc "Main Lobby"  
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccestb1 0 ipaddr 10.0.0.10 ipmask 255.255.0.0
```

## Configuring Objects that Require Reboot

Certain objects supported by the Access Point require a device reboot in order for the changes to take effect. In order to inform the end-user of this behavior, the CLI provides informational messages when the user has configured an object that requires a reboot. The following messages are displayed as a result of the configuring such object or objects.

### Example 1: Configuring objects that require the device to be rebooted

The following message is displayed every time the user has configured an object that requires the device to be rebooted.

```
[Device-Name]>set ipaddr 135.114.73.10
```

The following elements require reboot

**ipaddr**

### Example 2: Executing the “exit”, “quit”, or “done” commands when an object that requires reboot has been configured

In addition to the above informational message, the CLI also provides a message as a result of the **exit**, **quit**, or **done** command if changes have been made to objects that require reboot. If you make changes to objects that require reboot and execute the **exit** command the following message is displayed:

```
[Device-Name]>exit<CR> OR quit<CR> OR done<CR>
```

Modifications have been made to parameters that require the device to be rebooted. These changes will only take effect after the next reboot.

## “set” and “show” Command Examples

In general, you will use the CLI **show** Command to view current parameter values and use the CLI **set** Command to change parameter values. As shown in the following examples, parameters may be set individually or all parameters for a given table can be set with a single statement.

### Example 1 - Set the Access Point IP Address Parameter

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>set <parameter name> <parameter value>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set ipaddr 10.0.0.12
```

Result: IP Address will be changed when you reboot the Access Point. The CLI reminds you when rebooting is required for a change to take effect. To reboot immediately, enter **reboot 0** (zero) at the CLI prompt.



### Example 2 - Create a table entry or row

Use 0 (zero) as the index to a table when creating an entry. When creating a table row, only the mandatory table elements are required (comment is usually an optional table element). For optional table elements, the default value is generally applied if you do not specify a value.

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>set <table name> <table index> <element 1> <value 1> ...  
                <element n> <value n>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set mgmtipaccesstbl 0 ipaddr 10.0.0.10 ipmask 255.255.0.0
```

Result: A new table entry is created for IP address 10.0.0.10 with a 255.255.0.0 subnet mask.

### Example 3 - Modify a table entry or row

Use the index to be modified and the table elements you would like to modify. For example, suppose the IP Access Table has one entry and you wanted to modify the IP address:

```
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 1 ipaddr 10.0.0.11
```

You can also modify several elements in the table entry. Enter the index number and specific table elements you would like to modify. (Hint: Use the search Command to see the elements that belong to the table.)

```
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 1 ipaddr 10.0.0.12 ipmask 255.255.255.248  
                cmt "First Row"
```

### Example 4 - Enable, Disable, or Delete a table entry or row

The following example illustrates how to manage the second entry in a table.

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>set <Table> index status <enable, disable, delete>  
[Device-Name]>set <Table> index status <1=enable, 2=disable, 3=delete>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 2 status enable  
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 2 status disable  
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 2 status delete  
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 2 status 2
```

### ➡ NOTE

You may need to enable a disabled table entry before you can change the entry's elements.

### Example 5 - Show the Group Parameters

This example illustrates how to view all elements of a group or table.

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]> show <group name>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]>show network
```

Result: The CLI displays network group parameters. Note `show network` and `show ip` return the same data.

```

[Device-Name]> show network
IP/Network Group Parameters
=====

ipaddr       :      169.254.50.2
ipsubmask    :      255.255.0.0
ipgw         :      169.254.50.1
ipttl        :      64
ipaddrtype   :      static

[Device-Name]> show ip
IP/Network Group Parameters
=====

ipaddr       :      169.254.50.2
ipsubmask    :      255.255.0.0
ipgw         :      169.254.50.1
ipttl        :      64
ipaddrtype   :      static

```

**Figure A-10 Results of “show network” and “show ip” CLI Command**

### Example 6 - Show Individual and Table Parameters

1. View a single parameter.

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]>show <parameter name>
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> show ipaddr
```

Result: Displays the Access Point IP address.

```

[Device-Name]> show ipaddr
ipaddr
169.254.50.2

```

**Figure A-11 Result of “show ipaddr” CLI Command**

2. View all parameters in a table.

Syntax:

```
[Device-Name]> show <table name>
```

Example:[Device-Name]> show mgmtipaccesstbl

Result: Displays the IP Access Table and its entries.

## Using Tables & User Strings

### Working with Tables

Each table element (or parameter) must be specified, as in the example below.

```
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl 0 ipaddr 10.0.0.10 ipmask 255.255.0.0
```

Below are the rules for creating, modifying, enabling/disabling, and deleting table entries.

- Creation
  - The table name is required.
  - The table index is required – for table entry/instance creation the index is always zero (0).
  - The order in which the table arguments or objects are entered is not important.
  - Parameters that are not required can be omitted, in which case they will be assigned the default value.

- Modification
  - The table name is required.
  - The table index is required – to modify the table, “index” must be the index of the entry to be modified.
  - Only the table objects that are to be modified need to be specified. Not all the table objects are required.
  - If multiple table objects are to be modified the order in which they are entered is not important.
  - If the entire table entry is to be modified, all the table objects have to be specified.
- Enabling/Disabling
  - The table name is required.
  - The table index is required – for table enabling/disabling the index should be the index of the entry to be enabled/disabled.
  - The entry’s new state (either “enable” or “disable”) is required.
- Deletion
  - The table name is required.
  - The table index is required – for table deletion the index should be the index of the entry to be deleted.
  - The word “delete” is required.

## Using Strings

Since there are several string objects supported by the AP, a string delimiter is required for the strings to be interpreted correctly by the command line parser. For this CLI implementation, the single quote or double quote character can be used at the beginning and at the end of the string.

For example:

```
[Device-Name ]> set sysname Lobby - Does not need quote marks
[Device-Name ]> set sysname "Front Lobby" - Requires quote marks.
```

The scenarios supported by this CLI are:

"My Desk in the office"	Double Quotes
'My Desk in the office'	Single Quotes
"My 'Desk' in the office"	Single Quotes within Double Quotes
'My "Desk" in the office'	Double Quotes within Single Quotes
"Daniel's Desk in the office"	One Single Quote within Double Quotes
'Daniel"s Desk in the office'	One Double Quote within Single Quotes

The string delimiter does not have to be used for every string object. The single quote or double quote only has to be used for string objects that contain blank space characters. If the string object being used does not contain blank spaces, then the string delimiters, single or double quotes, mentioned in this section are not required.

## Configuring the AP using CLI commands

### Log into the AP using HyperTerminal

1. Open your terminal emulation program (like HyperTerminal) and set the following connection properties:
  - Com Port: <COM1, COM2, etc., depending on your computer>
  - Baud rate: 9600
  - Data Bits: 8
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow Control: None
  - Parity: None
2. Under **File > Properties > Settings > ASCII Setup**, enable the **Send line ends with line feeds** option.  
Result: HyperTerminal sends a line return at the end of each line of code.
3. Enter the CLI password (default is **public**).

 **NOTE**

SYSTIMAX recommends changing your default passwords immediately. To perform this operation using CLI commands, refer to [Change Passwords](#).

## Log into the AP using Telnet

The CLI commands can be used to access, configure, and manage the AP using Telnet. Follow these steps:

1. Confirm that your computer's IP address is in the same IP subnet as the AP.

 **NOTE**

If you have not previously configured the Access Point's IP address and do not have a DHCP server on the network, the Access Point will default to an IP address of 169.254.128.132.

2. Go to the DOS command prompt on your computer.
3. Type **telnet <IP Address of the unit>**.
4. Enter the CLI password (default is **public**).

 **NOTE**

SYSTIMAX recommends changing your default passwords immediately. To perform this operation using CLI commands, refer to [Change Passwords](#).

## Set Basic Configuration Parameters using CLI Commands

There are a few basic configuration parameters that you may want to setup right away when you receive the AP. For example:

- [Set System Name, Location and Contact Information](#)
- [Set Static IP Address for the AP](#)
- [Download an AP Configuration File from your TFTP Server](#)
- [Set up Auto Configuration](#)
- [Set Network Names for the Wireless Interface](#)
- [Enable 802.11d Support and Set the Country Code](#)
- [Enable and Configure TX Power Control for the Wireless Interface\(s\)](#)
- [Configure SSID \(Network Name\) and VLAN Pairs, and Profiles](#)
- [Download an AP Configuration File from your TFTP Server](#)
- [Backup your AP Configuration File](#)

### Set System Name, Location and Contact Information

```
[Device-Name]>set sysname <system name> sysloc <Unit Location>
[Device-Name]>set sysctname <Contact Name (person responsible for system)>
[Device-Name]>set sysctphone <Contact Phone Number> sysctemail <Contact E-mail address>
[Device-Name]>show system
```

```
[Device-Name]> show system
System Parameters
=====

sysname           : Device-Name
sysloc            : System Location
sysctname         : Contact Name
sysctemail        : name@Organization.com
sysctphone        : Contact Phone Number
sysuptime (DD:HH:MM:SS) : 0: 0:50:12
sysoid            : 1.3.6.1.4.1.11898.2.4.12
sysdescr          : AirSPEED AP542 v2.6.0(896) SN-04UT17570638 v3.1.0
syssservices      : 2
sysflashupdate    : 0
sysflashbckint   : 120
sysresettodefaults : 0
syscountrycode   : US
```

Figure A-12 Result of “show system” CLI Command

## Set Static IP Address for the AP

### ⇒ NOTE

The IP Subnet Mask of the AP must match your network's Subnet Mask.

```
[Device-Name]>set ipaddrtype static
[Device-Name]>set ipaddr <fixed IP address of unit>
[Device-Name]>set ipsubmask <IP Mask>
[Device-Name]>set ipgw <gateway IP address>
[Device-Name]>show network
```

## Change Passwords

```
[Device-Name]>passwd <Old Password> <New Password> <Confirm Password> (CLI password)
[Device-Name]>set httppasswd <New Password> (HTTP interface password)
[Device-Name]>set snmprpasswd <New Password> (SNMP read password)
[Device-Name]>set snmprpasswd <New Password> (SNMP read/write)
[Device-Name]>set snmpv3authpasswd <New Password> (SNMPv3 authentication password)
[Device-Name]>set snmpv3privpasswd <New Password> (SNMPv3 privacy password)
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

### ! CAUTION

SYSTIMAX strongly urges you to change the default passwords to restrict access to your network devices to authorized personnel. If you lose or forget your password settings, you can always perform the [Reset to Factory Default Procedure](#).

## Set Network Names for the Wireless Interface

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index 3 (Wireless Interface A) or 4 (Wireless Interface B)>
netname <Network Name (SSID) for wireless interface>
[Device-Name]>show wif
```

```
[Device Name]> show wif
Index : 3
Network Name : My Wireless Network A
Interference Robustness : Not Supported
DTIM Period : 1
Beacon Period : 100
Fragmentation Threshold : 2346
Automatic Channel Selection : enable
Supported Frequency Channels : 52 56 60 64 149 153 157 161 165
Frequency Channel : 149
RTS/CTS Medium Reservation : 2347
Supported Multicast Rates : 6 12 24
Multicast Rate : 24
Closed System : disable
Load Balancing : Not Supported
Medium Density Distribution : Not Supported
MAC Address : 00:20:A6:53:17:E1
Supported Data Rates : 0 6 9 12 18 24 36 48 54
Transmit Rate : 0
Physical Layer Type : OFDM
Regulatory Domain List : USA (FCC)
TurboMode : Not Supported
Supported Operational Modes : dot11a-only
Operational Mode : dot11a-only
Short Slot Time Status : Not Supported
Preamble Type : Not Supported
Short Preamble Mode : disable
802.11d Status : disable
Current Transmit Power Level : 1
WSS Status : resume
SuperMode : disable
QoS Status : disable
Maximum Medium Threshold : 90
Security Per SSID Status : disable
```

Figure A-13 Results of “show wif” CLI Command

## Enable 802.11d Support and Set the Country Code

Perform the following command to enable 802.11d IEEE 802.11d support for additional regulatory domains.

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> dot11dstatus <enable/disable>
```

Perform the following command to set a country code:

```
[Device-Name]>set syscountrycode <country code>
```

Select a country code from the following table. Note that not all countries are available for all products. This table is derived from ISO 3166.

### 802.11d County Codes

Country	Code	Country	Code	Country	Code
Algeria	DZ	Honduras	HN	Panama	PA
Albania	AL	Hong Kong	HK	Papua New Guinea	PG
Argentina	AR	Hungary	HU	Peru	PE
Armenia	AM	Iceland	IS	Philippines	PH
Australia	AU	India	IN	Poland	PL
Austria	AT	Indonesia	ID	Portugal	PT
Azerbaijan	AZ	Ireland 5.8 GHz	I1	Puerto Rico	PR
Bahrain	BH	Israel	IL	Qatar	QA
Belarus	BY	Italy	IT	Romania	RO
Belgium	BE	Jamaica	JM	Russia	RU
Belize	BZ	Japan	JP	Samoa	WS
Bolivia	BO	Japan2	J2	Saudi Arabia	SA
Brazil	BR	Jordan	JO	Singapore	SG
Brunei Darussalam	BN	Kazakhstan	KZ	Slovak Republic	SK
Bulgaria	BG	North Korea	KP	Slovenia	SI
Canada	CA	Korea Republic	KR	South Africa	ZA
Chile	CL	Korea Republic2	K2	South Korea	KR
China	CN	Kuwait	KW	Spain	ES
Colombia	CO	Latvia	LV	Sweden	SE
Costa Rica	CR	Lebanon	LB	Switzerland	CH
Croatia	HR	Liechtenstein	LI	Syria	SY
Cyprus	CY	Lithuania	LT	Taiwan	TW
Czech Republic	CZ	Luxembourg	LU	Thailand	TH
Denmark	DK	Macau	MO	Turkey	TR
Dominican Republic	DO	Macedonia	MK	Ukraine	UA
Ecuador	EC	Malaysia	MY	United Arab Emirates	AE
Egypt	EG	Malta	MT	United Kingdom	GB
El Salvador	SV	Mexico	MX	United Kingdom 5.8ghz	G1
Estonia	EE	Monaco	MC	United States	US
Finland	FI	Morocco	MA	United States World	UW
France	FR	Netherlands	NL	United States Dfs	U1
Georgia	GE	New Zealand	NZ	Uruguay	UY
Germany	DE	Nicaragua	NI	Venezuela	VE
Greece	GR	Norway	NO	Vietnam	VN
Guam	GU	Oman	OM		
Guatemala	GT	Pakistan	PK		

## Enable and Configure TX Power Control for the Wireless Interface(s)

The TX Power Control feature lets the user configure the transmit power level of the radio in the AP at one of four levels:

- 100% of the maximum transmit power level of the radio
- 50%
- 25%
- 12.5%

Perform the following commands to enable TX Power Control and set the transmit power level. Note that allowed values are: 1 (100%), 2 (50%), 3 (25%), 4 (12.5%).

```
[Device-Name]>set txpowercontrol enable
```

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <interface number> currenttxpowerlevel <value> (see below)
```

Level	Value
100%	1
50%	2
25%	3
12.5%	4

## Configure SSID (Network Name) and VLAN Pairs, and Profiles

Perform the following command to configure an SSID/VLAN pair, and to assign a Security Profile and RADIUS Profiles to it.

```
[Device-Name]>set wifssidtbl <Index.subindex> ssid <Network Name> vlanid <-1 to 1094>
ssidauth <enable/disable> acctstatus <enable/disable> secprofile <Security Profile
Nnumber> radmacprofile <MAC Authentication Profile Name> radeaprofile <EAP
Authentication Profile Name> radacctprofile <Accounting Profile Name> radmacauthstatus
<enable/disable> aclstatus <enable/disable>
```

Examples:

```
[Device-Name]> set wifssidtbl 3.1 ssid accesspt1 vlanid 22 ssidauth enable acctstatus
enable secprofile 1 radmacprofile "MAC Authentication" radeaprofile "EAP
Authentication" radacctprofile "Accounting" radmacauthstatus enable aclstatus enable
[Device-Name]> set wifssidtbl 4.1 ssid accesspt1 vlanid 22 ssidauth enable acctstatus
enable secprofile 1 radmacprofile "MAC Authentication" radeaprofile "EAP
Authentication" radacctprofile "Accounting" radmacauthstatus enable aclstatus enable
```

## Download an AP Configuration File from your TFTP Server

Begin by starting your TFTP program. It must be running and configured to transmit and receive.

```
[Device-Name]>set tftpfilename <file name> tftpfiletype config
tftpipaddr <IP address of your TFTP server>
[Device-Name]>show tftp (to ensure the filename, file type, and the IP address are correct)
[Device-Name]>download *
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

After following the complete process (above) once, you can download a file of the same name (so long as all the other parameters are the same), with the following command:

```
[Device-Name]>download *
```

## Backup your AP Configuration File

Begin by starting your TFTP program. It must be running and configured to transmit and receive.

```
[Device-Name]>upload <TFTP Server IP address> <tftpfilename (such as "config.sys")> config
[Device-Name]>show tftp (to ensure the filename, file type, and the IP address are correct)
```



After setting the TFTP parameters, you can backup your current file (so long as all the other parameters are the same), with the following command:

```
[Device-Name]>upload *
```

## Set up Auto Configuration

The Auto Configuration feature allows an AP to be automatically configured by downloading a specific configuration file from a TFTP server during the boot up process.

Perform the following commands to enable and set up automatic configuration:

### ⇒ NOTE

The configuration filename and TFTP server IP address are configured only when the AP is configured for Static IP. If the AP is configured for Dynamic IP these parameters are not used and obtained from DHCP. The default filename is "config". The default TFTP IP address is "169.254.128.133" for AirSPEED AP542

```
[Device-Name]>set autoconfigstatus <enable/disable>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set autoconfigfilename <filename>
```

Enter the filename of the configuration file that is used if the AP is configured for Static IP.

```
[Device-Name]>set autoconfigTFTPadr <IP address>
```

Enter the TFTP server address that is used if the AP is configured for Static IP.

## Other Network Settings

There are other configuration settings that you may want to set for the AP. Some of them are listed below.

- [Configure the AP as a DHCP Server](#)
- [Configure the DNS Client](#)
- [Configure DHCP Relay](#) and [Configure DHCP Relay Servers](#)
- [Maintain Client Connections using Link Integrity](#)
- [Change your Wireless Interface Settings](#)
- [Set Ethernet Speed and Transmission Mode](#)
- [Set Interface Management Services](#)
- [Configure MAC Access Control](#)
- [Set RADIUS Parameters](#)
- [Set Rogue Scan Parameters](#)
- [Set Hardware Configuration Reset Parameters](#)
- [Set VLAN/SSID Parameters](#)

### ⇒ NOTE

Refer to [Performing Advanced Configuration](#) for more information on these settings.

## Configure the AP as a DHCP Server

### ⇒ NOTE

You must have at least one entry in the DHCP Server IP Address Pool Table before you can set the DHCP Server Status to Enable.

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcpstatus disable
```

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcpippooltbl 0 startipaddr <start ip address>
endipaddr <end ip address>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcpgw <gateway ip address>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcppridnsipaddr <primary dns ip address>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcpsecdnsipaddr <secondary dns ip address>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcpstatus enable
```

```
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```



### CAUTION

Before enabling this feature, confirm that the IP address pools you have configured are valid addresses on the network and do not overlap the addresses assigned by any other DHCP server on the network. Enabling this feature with incorrect address pools will cause problems on your network.

## Configure the DNS Client

```
[Device-Name]>set dnsstatus enable
[Device-Name]>set dnsprisivripaddr <IP address of primary DNS server>
[Device-Name]>set dnssecsvripaddr <IP address of secondary DNS server>
[Device-Name]>set dnsdomainname <default domain name>
[Device-Name]>show dns
```

```
[Device-Name]> show dns
DNS Client Group
=====
dnsstatus      :      disable
dnsprisivripaddr :      0.0.0.0
dnssecsvripaddr :      0.0.0.0
dnsdomainname  :
```

Figure A-14 Results of “show dns” CLI Command

## Configure DHCP Relay

Perform the following command to enable or disable DHCP Relay Agent Status.



### NOTE

You must have at least one entry in the DHCP Relay Server Table before you can set the DHCP Relay Status to Enable.

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcprelaystatus enable
```

## Configure DHCP Relay Servers

Perform the following command to configure and enable a DHCP Relay Server. The AP allows the configuration of a maximum of 10 server settings in the DHCP Relay Agents server table.

```
[Device-Name]>set dhcprlyindex 1 dhcprlyipaddr <ip address> dhcprlycmt <comment>
dhcprlystatus 1 (1 to enable, 2 to disable, 3 to delete, 4 to create)
```

## Maintain Client Connections using Link Integrity

```
[Device-Name]>show linkinttbl (this shows the current links)
[Device-Name]>set linkinttbl <1-5 (depending on what table row you wish to address)>
ipaddr <ip address of the host computer you want to check>
[Device-Name]>set linkintpollint <the interval between link integrity checks>
[Device-Name]>set linkintpollretx <number of times to retransmit before considering
the link down>
[Device-Name]>set linkintstatus enable
[Device-Name]>show linkinttbl (confirm new settings)
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

## Change your Wireless Interface Settings

See [Interfaces](#) for information on the parameters listed below. The AirSPEED AP542 uses index 3 for Wireless Interface A (802.11a radio) and index 4 for Wireless Interface B (802.11b/g radio).

## Operational Mode

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> mode <see below>
```

Mode	Operational Mode
1	dot11b-only
2	dot11g-only
3	dot11bg
4	dot11a-only
5	dot11g-wifi

## Autochannel Select (ACS)

ACS is enabled by default. Reboot after disabling or enabling ACS.

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> autochannel <enable/disable>
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

## Enable/Disable Closed System

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> closedsys <enable/disable>
```

## Shutdown/Resume Wireless Service

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> wssstatus <1 (resume)/2 (shutdown)>
```

## Set Load Balancing Maximum Number of Clients

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> lbmaxclients <1-63>
```

## Set the Multicast Rate

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> multrate <1, 2, 5.5, 6, 11, 12, 24 (Mbits/s) (see below)>
```

Operational Mode	Multicast Rates
802.11a only	6, 12, and 24 Mbits/s
802.11b only	1 and 2 Mbits/s
802.11g only	6, 12, and 24 Mbits/s
802.11b/g	1, 2, 5.5, and 11 Mbits/s
802.11g-wifi	1, 2, 5.5, 6, 11, 12, and 24 Mbits/s

## Enable/Disable Super Mode (802.11a mode and 802.11g mode only)

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> super <enable/disable>
```

## Enable/Disable Turbo Mode (802.11a mode and 802.11g mode only)

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> turbo <enable/disable>
```



### NOTE

Super mode must be enabled on the interface before Turbo mode can be enabled.

## Configure Antenna Diversity

```
[Device-Name]>set wif 3 atdiversity <3, 4, 5(auto)>
[Device-Name]>set wif 4 atdiversity <1, 2, 5(auto)>
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

### Set the Distance Between APs

```
[Device-Name]>set wif <index> distaps <1-5> (see below)
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

Value	Distance Between APs
1	Large
2	Medium
3	Small
4	Mini
5	Micro

### Set Ethernet Speed and Transmission Mode

```
[Device-Name]>set etherspeed <value (see below)>
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

Ethernet Speed and Transmission Mode	Value
10 Mbits/s - half duplex	10halfduplex
10 Mbits/s - full duplex	10fullduplex
10 Mbits/s - auto duplex	10autoduplex
100 Mbits/s - half duplex	100halfduplex
100 Mbits/s - full duplex	100fullduplex
Auto Speed - half duplex	autohalfduplex
Auto Speed - auto duplex	autoautoduplex (default)

### Set Interface Management Services

#### Edit Management IP Access Table

```
[Device-Name]>set mgmtipaccesstbl <index> ipaddr <IP address> ipmask <subnet mask>
```

#### Configure Management Ports

```
[Device-Name]>set snmpifbitmask <(see below)>
[Device-Name]>set httpifbitmask <(see below)>
[Device-Name]>set telifbitmask <(see below)>
```

Choose from the following values:

Interface Bitmask	Description
0 or 2 = disable (all interfaces)	All management channels disabled
1 or 3 = Ethernet only	Ethernet only enabled
4 or 6 = Wireless A only	Wireless A only enabled
8 or 10 = Wireless B only	Wireless B only enabled
12 = Wireless A and Wireless B	Wireless A and Wireless B enabled
13 or 15 = all interfaces	All management channels enabled

#### Set Communication Ports

```
[Device-Name]>set httpport <HTTP port number (default is 80)>
[Device-Name]>set telport <Telnet port number (default is 23)>
```

#### Configure Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS)

Enabling SSL and configuring a passphrase allows encrypted Secure Socket Layer communications to the AP through the HTTPS interface.

```
[Device-Name]>set sslstatus <enable/disable>
```

The user must change the SSL passphrase when uploading a new certificate/private key pair, which will have a corresponding passphrase.

```
[Device-Name]>set sslpassphrase <SSL certificate passphrase>
```

### View HTTP Information

To view all HTTP configuration information including SSL, use the `show http` command.

```
[Device-Name]>show http
```

```
[Device-Name]> show http
HTTP Group Parameters
=====
httpifbitmask      :      15
httppasswd         :      *****
httpport          :      80
httphelpink       :      file:///C:/ProgramFiles/AirSPEED/AP542/HTML/home.htm
httpsetupwiz      :      disable
sslstatus         :      enable
sslpassphrase     :      *****
```

Figure A-15 Results of “show http” CLI Command

### Set Telnet Session Timeouts

```
[Device-Name]>set tellogintout <time in seconds between 1 and 300 (default is 30)>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set telsessiontout <time in seconds between 1 and 36000 (default is 900)>
```

### Configure Serial Port Interface

#### ➤ NOTE

To avoid unexpected performance issues, leave Flow Control at the default setting (none) unless you are sure what this setting should be.

```
[Device-Name]>set serbaudrate <2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set serflowctrl <none, xonxoff>
```

```
[Device-Name]>show serial
```

```
[Device-Name]> show serial
Serial Interface Group Parameters
=====
serbaudrate       :      9600
serdatabits       :      8
serparity         :      none
serstopbits       :      1
serflowctrl       :      none
```

Figure A-16 Result of “show serial” CLI Command

### Configure Syslog

```
[Device-Name]>set syslogpriority <1-7 (default is 6)>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set syslogstatus <enable/disable>
```

```
[Device-Name]>set sysloghbstatus <enable/disable> (default is disable)
```

```
[Device-Name]>set sysloghbinterval <1 - 604800> (default is 900 seconds)
```

```
[Device-Name]>set sysloghosttbl <index> ipaddr <ipaddress> cmt <comment> status
<enable/disable>
```

## Configure Intra BSS

```
[Device-Name]>set intrabssoptype <passthru (default)/block>
```

## Configure MAC Access Control

### Setup MAC (Address) Access Control

```
[Device-Name]>set aclstatus enable/disable
[Device-Name]>set macacloptype <passthru, block>
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

### Add an Entry to the MAC Access Control Table

```
[Device-Name]>set macacltbl <index> macaddr <MAC Address> status enable
[Device-Name]>show macacltbl
```

### Disable or Delete an Entry in the MAC Access Control Table

```
[Device-Name]>set macacltbl <index> status <disable/delete>
[Device-Name]>show macacltbl
```

### NOTE

For larger networks that include multiple Access Points, you may prefer to maintain this list on a centralized location using the RADIUS parameters (see [Set RADIUS Parameters](#)).

## Set RADIUS Parameters

### Configure RADIUS Authentication servers

Perform the following command to configure a RADIUS Server and assign it to a VLAN. The RADIUS Server Profile index is specified by the index parameter and the subindex parameter specifies whether you are configuring a primary or secondary RADIUS server.

```
[Device-Name]>set radiustbl <Index> profname <Profile Name> seraddrfmt <1 - IP Address
2 - Name> sernameorip <IP Address or Name> port <value> ssecret <value> responsetm
<value> maxretx <value> acctupdtintrvl <value> macaddrfmt <value> authlifetm <value>
radaccinactivetmr <value> vlanid <vlan id -1 to 4094> status enable
```

### Examples of Configuring Primary and Secondary RADIUS Servers and Displaying the RADIUS Configuration

Primary server configuration:

```
[Device-Name]>set radiustbl 1.1 profname "MAC Authentication" seraddrfmt 1 sernameorip
20.0.0.20 port 1812 ssecret public responsetm 3 maxretx 3 acctupdtintrvl 0 macaddrfmt 1
authlifetm 900 radaccinactivetmr 5 vlanid 22 status enable
```

Secondary server configuration:

```
[Device-Name]>set radiustbl 1.2 profname "MAC Authentication" seraddrfmt 1 sernameorip
20.0.0.30 port 1812 ssecret public responsetm 3 maxretx 3 acctupdtintrvl 0 macaddrfmt 1
authlifetm 900 radaccinactivetmr 5 vlanid 33 status enable
```

Results of show radiustbl command:

```
[Device-Name]>show radiustbl
```

```

[Device-Name]: show radiustbl
Index                               : 1
Primary/Backup                       : Primary
Profile Name                         : MAC Authentication
Server Status                        : notReady
Server Addressing Format              : ipaddr
IP Address/Host Name                 : 0.0.0.0
Destination Port                     : 1812
VLAN Identifier                      : -1
MAC Address Format                    : dashdelimited
Response Time                        : 3
Maximum Retransmission               : 3
Authorization Lifetime                : 0
Accounting Update Interval           : 0
Accounting Inactivity Timer          : 5
.
.
.
Index                               : 4
Primary/Backup                       : Backup
Profile Name                         : Management Access
Server Status                        : notReady
Server Addressing Format              : ipaddr
IP Address/Host Name                 : 0.0.0.0
Destination Port                     : 1812
VLAN Identifier                      : -1
MAC Address Format                    : dashdelimited
Response Time                        : 3
Maximum Retransmission               : 3
Authorization Lifetime                : 0
Accounting Update Interval           : 0
Accounting Inactivity Timer          : 5

```

**Figure A-17** Example of “show radiustbl” CLI Command

## Set Rogue Scan Parameters

Perform the following command to enable or disable Rogue Scan on a wireless interface and configure the scanning parameters.

The cycletime parameter is only configured for background scanning mode.

```

[Device-Name]>set rscantbl <3, 4> mode <1 for background scanning, 2 for continuous scanning> cycletime <cycletime from 1-1440 minutes> status <enable, disable>

```

### ➡ NOTE

Rogue Scan cannot be enabled on a wireless interface when the Wireless Service Status on that interface is shutdown. First, resume service on the wireless interface.

## Set Hardware Configuration Reset Parameters

The Hardware Configuration Reset commands allows you to enable or disable the hardware reset functionality and to change the password to be used for configuration reset during boot up.

To disable hardware configuration reset, enter:

```

[Device-Name]>set hwconfigresetstatus disable

```

To enable hardware configuration reset, enter:

```

[Device-Name]>set hwconfigresetstatus enable

```

To define the Configuration Reset Password to be used for configuration reset during boot up, enter the following command

```

[Device-Name]>set configresetpasswd <password>

```

 **NOTE**

It is important to safely store the configuration reset password. If a user forgets the configuration reset password, the user will be unable to reset the AP to factory default configuration if the AP becomes inaccessible and the hardware configuration reset functionality is disabled.

**Set VLAN/SSID Parameters****Enable VLAN Management**

```
[Device-Name]>set vlanstatus enable
[Device-Name]>set vlanmgmtid <-1-4094>
[Device-Name]>show wifssidtbl (to review your settings)
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

**Disable VLAN Management**

```
[Device-Name]>set vlanstatus disable
[Device-Name]>set vlanmgmtid 0
[Device-Name]>reboot 0
```

**Add a Entry to the WIFSSID Table**

```
[Device-Name]>set wifssidtbl <index> ssid <Network Name> vlanid <-1-4094> status enable
```



## CLI Monitoring Parameters

Using the **show** command with the following table parameters will display operating statistics for the AP (these are the same statistics that are described in [Monitoring the AirSPEED AP542](#) for the HTTP Web interface).

- **staticmp**: Displays the ICMP statistics.
- **statarptbl**: Displays the IP ARP Table statistics.
- **statbridgetbl**: Displays the Learn Table.
- **statiapp**: Displays the IAPP statistics.
- **statradius**: Displays the RADIUS Authentication statistics.
- **statif**: Displays information and statistics about the Ethernet and wireless interfaces.
- **stat802.11**: Displays additional statistics for the wireless interfaces.
- **statethernet**: Displays additional statistics for the Ethernet interface.
- **statmss**: Displays station statistics and Wireless Distribution System links.

## Parameter Tables

Objects contain groups that contain both Parameters and Parameter Tables. Use the following tables to configure the Access Point. Columns used on the tables include:

- Name - Parameter, Group, or Table name
- Type - Data type
- Values - Value range, and default value, if any
- Access = access type, R = Read Only (show), RW = Read-Write (can be “set”), W = Write Only
- CLI Parameter - Parameter name as used in the Access Point

Access Point network objects are associated with Groups. The network objects are listed below and associated parameters are described in the following Parameter Tables:

- [System Parameters](#) - Access Point system information
  - [Inventory Management Information](#) - Hardware, firmware, and software version information
- [Network Parameters](#) - IP and network settings
  - [IP Configuration Parameters](#) - Configure the Access Point's IP settings
    - [DNS Client for RADIUS Name Resolution](#) - Configure the Access Point as a DNS client
  - [DHCP Server Parameters](#) - Enable or disable dynamic host configuration
  - [Link Integrity Parameters](#) - Monitor link status
- [Interface Parameters](#) - Configure wireless and Ethernet settings
  - [Wireless Interface Parameters](#)
    - [Wireless Distribution System \(WDS\) Parameters](#) - Configure the WDS partnerships
  - [Wireless Interface SSID/VLAN/Profile Parameters](#) - Configure the SSID and VLAN pairs and the security mode for each pair. Up to 16 pairs can be configured per wireless interface.
  - [Ethernet Interface Parameters](#) - Set the speed and duplex of the Ethernet port
- [Management Parameters](#) - Control access to the AP's management interfaces
  - [SNMP Parameters](#) - Set read and read/write passwords
  - [HTTP \(web browser\) Parameters](#) - Set up the graphical web browser interface. If required, enable SSL and configure the SSL certificate passphrase.
  - [Telnet Parameters](#) - Telnet port setup
  - [Serial Port Parameters](#) - Serial port setup
  - [RADIUS Based Management Access Parameters](#) - Configure RADIUS-based management access for HTTP and telnet access
  - [SSH Parameters](#) - Enable SSH and configure the host key
  - [TFTP Server Parameters](#) - Set up for file transfers; specify IP Address, file name, and file type
  - [IP Access Table Parameters](#) - Configure range of IP addresses that can access the AP
  - [Auto Configuration Parameters](#) - Configure the Auto Configuration feature, which allows an AP to be automatically configured by downloading a configuration file from a TFTP server during boot up
- [Filtering Parameters](#)

- [Ethernet Protocol Filtering Parameters](#) - Control network traffic based on protocol type
- [Static MAC Address Filter Table](#) - Enable and disable specific addresses
- [Proxy ARP Parameters](#) - Enable or disable proxy ARP for wireless clients
- [IP ARP Filtering Parameters](#) - Control which ARP messages are sent to wireless clients based on IP settings
- [Broadcast Filtering Table](#) - Control the type of broadcast packets forwarded to the wireless network
- [TCP/UDP Port Filtering](#) - Filter IP packets based on TCP/UDP port
- [Alarms Parameters](#)
  - [SNMP Table Host Table Parameters](#) - Enter the list of IP addresses that will receive alarms from the AP
  - [Syslog Parameters](#) - Configure the AP to send syslog information to network servers
- [Bridge Parameters](#)
  - [Spanning Tree Parameters](#) - Used to help prevent network loops
  - [Storm Threshold Parameters](#) - Set threshold for number of broadcast packets
  - [Intra BSS Subscriber Blocking](#) - Enable or disable peer to peer traffic on the same AP
  - [Packet Forwarding Parameters](#) - Redirect traffic from wireless clients to a specified MAC address
- [RADIUS Parameters](#)
  - [Set RADIUS Parameters](#) - Configure RADIUS Servers and assign them to VLANs.
- [Security Parameters](#) - Access Point security settings
  - [MAC Access Control Parameters](#) - Control wireless access based on MAC address
  - [Rogue Scan Configuration Table](#) - Enable and configure Rogue Scan to detect Rogue APs and clients.
  - [Hardware Configuration Reset](#) - Disable or enable hardware configuration reset and configure a configuration reset password.
  - [VLAN/SSID Parameters](#) - Enable the configuration of multiple subnetworks based on VLAN ID and SSID pairs.
  - [Security Profile Table](#) - Configure security profiles that define allowed security modes (wireless clients), and encryption and authentication mechanisms.
- [Other Parameters](#)
  - [IAPP Parameters](#) - Enable or disable the Inter-Access Point Protocol
  - [Wi-Fi Multimedia \(WMM\)/Quality of Service \(QoS\) parameters](#) - Enable and configure Wi-Fi Multimedia/Quality of Service parameters, QoS policies, mapping priorities, and EDCA parameters. Apply a configured QoS policy to a particular SSID.

## System Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
System	Group	N/A	R	system
Name	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	sysname
Location	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	sysloc
Contact Name	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	sysctname
Contact E-mail	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	sysctemail
Contact Phone	DisplayString	User Defined max 254 characters	RW	sysctphone
FLASH Backup Interval	Integer	0 - 65535 seconds	RW	sysflashbckint
Flash Update		0 1	RW	sysflashupdate
System OID	DisplayString	N/A	R	sysoid
Descriptor	DisplayString	System Name, flash version, S/N, bootloader version	R	sysdescr
Up Time	Integer	dd:hh:mm:ss dd – days hh – hours mm – minutes ss – seconds	R	sysuptime
Emergency Restore to Defaults		Resets all parameters to default factory values	RW	sysresettodefaults Note: You must enter the following command twice to reset to defaults: <b>set sysresettodefaults 1</b>

## Inventory Management Information

The inventory management commands display advanced information about the AP's installed components. You may be asked to report this information to a representative if you contact customer support.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
System Inventory Management	Subgroup	N/A	R	sysinvmgmt
Component Table	Subgroup	N/A	R	sysinvmgmtcptbl
Component Interface Table	Subgroup	N/A	R	sysinvmgmtcpiftbl

## Network Parameters

### IP Configuration Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Network	Group	N/A	R	network
IP Configuration	Group	N/A	R	ip (Note: The <b>network</b> and <b>ip</b> parameters display the same information)
IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipaddr
IP Mask	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipmask
Default Router IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipgw
Default TTL	Integer	User Defined (seconds) 0-255, 64 (default)	RW	ipttl
Address Type	Integer	static dynamic (default)	RW	ipaddrtype

#### NOTE

The IP Address Assignment Type (ipaddrtype) must be set to static before the IP Address (ipaddr), IP Mask (ipmask) or Default Gateway IP Address (ipgw) values can be entered.

### DNS Client for RADIUS Name Resolution

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
DNS Client	Group	N/A	R	dns
DNS Client status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	dnsstatus
Primary DNS Server IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dnspridnsipaddr
Secondary DNS Server IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dnssecdnsipaddr
Default Domain Name	Integer32	User Defined (up to 254 characters)	RW	dnsdomainname

## DHCP Server Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
DHCP Server	Group	N/A	R	dhcp
DHCP Server Status	Integer	enable (1) (default) disable (2) delete (3)	RW	dhcpstatus
Gateway IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dhcpgw
Primary DNS IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dhcppridnsipaddr
Secondary DNS IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dhcpsecdnsipaddr
Number of IP Pool Table Entries	Integer32	N/A	R	dhcpiptooltblent

### ⇒ NOTE

The DHCP Server (dhcpstatus) can only be enabled after a DHCP IP Pool table entry has been created.

## DHCP Server table for IP pools

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
DHCP Server IP Address Pool Table	Table	N/A	R	dhcpiptooltbl
Table Index	Integer	User Defined	N/A	index
Start IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	startipaddr
End IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	endipaddr
Width	Integer	User Defined	RW	width
Default Lease Time (optional)	Integer32	> 0 86400 sec (default)	RW	defleasetm
Maximum Lease Time (optional)	Integer32	> 0 86400 sec (default)	RW	maxleasetm
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (1) disable (2) delete (3)	RW	status

### ⇒ NOTE

Set either End IP Address or Width (but not both) when creating an IP address pool.

## DHCP Relay Group

The DHCP Relay Group allows you to enable or disable DHCP Relay Agent Status.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
DHCP Relay Group	Group	N/A	R	dhcprelay
Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	dhcprelaystatus
DHCP Relay Server Table	Table		R	dhcprelaytbl

## DHCP Relay Server Table

The DHCP Relay Server Table contains the commands to set the table entries. The AP supports the configuration of a maximum of 10 server settings in the DHCP Relay Agents server table.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
DHCP Relay Server Table	Table	N/A	R	dhcprelaytbl
DHCP Relay Server Table Entry Index	Integer32	1...10	R	dhcprlyindex
DHCP Relay Server Table Entry IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	dhcprlyipaddr
DHCP Relay Server Table Entry Comment	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	dhcprlycmt
DHCP Relay Server Table Entry Status	Integer	enable (1) disable (2) delete (3) create (4)	RW	dhcprlystatus

## Link Integrity Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Link Integrity	Group	N/A	R	linkint
Link Integrity Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	linkintstatus
Link Integrity Poll Interval	Integer	500 - 15000 ms (in increments of 500ms) 500 ms (default)	RW	linkintpollint
Link Integrity Poll Retransmissions	Integer	0 - 255 5 (default)	RW	linkintpollretx

## Link Integrity IP Target Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Link Integrity IP Target Table	Table	N/A	R	linkinttbl
Table Index	Integer	1-5	N/A	index
Target IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipaddr
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined (up to 254 characters)	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable disable (default) delete	RW	status

## Interface Parameters

### Wireless Interface Parameters

The wireless interface group parameter is **wif**. Wireless Interface A (802.11a radio) uses table index 3 and Wireless Interface B (802.11b/g radio) uses table index 4.

#### Common Parameters to 802.11a/b/g

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Wireless Interfaces	Group	N/A	R	wif
Table Index	Integer	3 (Wireless Interface A) or 4 (Wireless Interface B)	R	index
Network Name	DisplayString	1 – 32 characters My Wireless Network (default)	RW	netname
Auto Channel Select (ACS) <sup>1</sup>	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	autochannel
DTIM Period	Integer	1 – 255 1 = default	RW	dtimperiod
RTS/CTS Medium Reservation	Integer	0 – 2347 Default is 2347 (off)	RW	medres
MAC Address	PhyAddress	12 hex digits	R	macaddr
Closed System	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	closedsys
Wireless Service Status <sup>2</sup>	Integer	1 = resume 2 = shutdown	RW	wssstatus
Supported Frequency Channels	Octet String	Depends on Regulatory Domain	R	suppchannels
Load Balancing Max Clients	Integer	1 – 63	R/W	lbmaxclients
Antenna Diversity	Integer	1 (Antenna 1), 2 (Antenna 2), 3 (Antenna 3), 4 (Antenna 4), 5 (Auto)	R/W	atdiversity
Distance Between APs <sup>3</sup>	Integer	1 (large) (default) 2 (medium) 3 (small), 4 (minicell) 5 (microcell)	R/W	distaps

**Note 1:** For 802.11a APs certified in the ETSI regulatory domain and operating in the middle frequency band, disabling Auto Channel Select will limit the available channels to those in the lower frequency band. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#).

**Note 2:** Wireless Service Status cannot be shut down on an interface where Rogue Scan is enabled.

**Note 3:** Distance Between APs allows the AP to perform better in high noise environments by increasing the receive sensitivity and transmit defer threshold, as follows:

Distance Between APs	Receive Sensitivity Threshold		Transmit Defer Threshold	
	Value	dBm	Value	dBm
Large	0	-96	33	-62
Medium	9	-86	33	-62
Small	17	-78	43	-52
Mini	25	-70	53	-42
Micro	33	-62	59	-36

**802.11a Only Parameters**

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Operating Frequency Channel	Integer	Varies by regulatory domain and country. See <a href="#">802.11a Channel Frequencies</a>	RW	channel
Supported Data Rates	Octet String	See <a href="#">Transmit Rate</a> , below	R	suppdatarates
Transmit Rate	Integer32	0 - Auto Fallback (default) 6 Mbits/s 9 Mbits/s 12 Mbits/s 18 Mbits/s 24 Mbits/s 36 Mbits/s 48 Mbits/s 54 Mbits/s	RW	txrate
Physical Layer Type	Integer	OFDM (orthogonal frequency division multiplexing) for 802.11a	R	phytype
Super Mode	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	supermode
Turbo Mode <sup>1</sup>	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	turbomode
Regulatory Domain List	DisplayString	FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, Iceland, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Switzerland ASIA: China, Hong Kong, South Korea SG: Singapore TELEC: Japan TW: Taiwan	R	regdomain

**Note 1:** Super Mode must be enabled on the wireless interface before Turbo Mode can be enabled.



**802.11b Only Parameters**

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Operating Frequency Channel	Integer	1 - 14; available channels vary by regulatory domain/country; see <a href="#">802.11b/g Channel Frequencies</a>	RW	channel
Multicast Rate	Integer	1 Mbits/s (1) 2 Mbits/s (2) (default) 5.5 Mbits/s (3) 11 Mbits/s (4)	RW	multirate
Closed Wireless System	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	closedsys
MAC Address	PhyAddress	12 hex digits	R	macaddr
Supported Data Rates	Octet String	1 Mbits/s 2 Mbits/s 5.5 Mbits/s 11 Mbits/s	R	suppdatarates
Transmit Rate	Integer32	0 (auto fallback - default) 1 Mbits/s 2 Mbits/s 5.5 Mbits/s 11 Mbits/s	RW	txrate
Physical Layer Type	Integer	DSSS (direct sequence spread spectrum) for 802.11b	R	phytype
Regulatory Domain List	DisplayString	FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, China, Iceland, India, Hong Kong, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, South Korea, Switzerland, Taiwan, United Arab Emirates TELEC: Japan	R	regdomain

## 802.11b/g Only Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Wireless Operational Mode	Integer	dot11b-only dot11g-only dot11bg (default)	RW	mode
Operating Frequency Channel	Integer	1 - 14; available channels vary by regulatory domain/country; see <a href="#">802.11b/g Channel Frequencies</a>	RW	channel
Supported Data Rates	Octet String	See <a href="#">Transmit Rate</a> , below	R	suppdatarates
Transmit Rate	Integer32	For 802.11b-only mode: 0 (auto fallback - default) 1 Mbits/s 2 Mbits/s 5.5 Mbits/s 11 Mbits/s For 802.11g-only mode: 0 (auto fallback - default) 6 Mbits/s 9 Mbits/s 12 Mbits/s 18 Mbits/s 24 Mbits/s 36 Mbits/s 48 Mbits/s 54 Mbits/s For 802.11b/g mode: 0 (auto fallback - default) 1 Mbits/s 2 Mbits/s 5.5 Mbits/s 11 Mbits/s 6 Mbits/s 9 Mbits/s 12 Mbits/s 18 Mbits/s 24 Mbits/s 36 Mbits/s 48 Mbits/s 54 Mbits/s	RW	txrate
Physical Layer Type	Integer	ERP (Extended Rate Protocol)	R	phytype
Super Mode	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	supermode
Turbo Mode <sup>1</sup>	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	turbomode
Regulatory Domain List	DisplayString	FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, China, Iceland, India, Hong Kong, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, South Korea, Switzerland, Taiwan, United Arab Emirates TELEC: Japan	R	regdomain

**Note 1:** Super Mode must be enabled on the wireless interface before Turbo Mode can be enabled.

## Wireless Distribution System (WDS) Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
WDS Table	Table	N/A	R	wdstbl
Port Index	Integer	3.1 - 3.6 (Wireless)	R	portindex
Status	Integer	enable, disable	RW	status
Partner MAC Address	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	partnermacaddr

## Wireless Interface SSID/VLAN/Profile Parameters

The Wireless Interface SSID table manages the SSID/VLAN pairs, Security Profile, and RADIUS Profiles associated to the VLAN.

For configuration examples, refer to [Configure SSID \(Network Name\) and VLAN Pairs, and Profiles](#).

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Wireless Interface SSID Table	Table	N/A	R	wifssidtbl
Table Index	Integer	Primary wireless interface = 3 Secondary wireless interface = 4	R	index
Table Index	Integer	1 - 16 (SSID index)	R	ssidindex
SSID	DisplayString	1 - 32 characters	RW	ssid
VLAN ID	VlanId	-1- 4094	RW	vlanid
Table Row Status	RowStatus	enable, disable delete	RW	status
SSID Authorization Status per VLAN	Integer	enable disable	RW	ssidauth
RADIUS Accounting Status per VLAN	Integer	enable disable	RW	acctstatus
MAC ACL Status per VLAN	Integer	enable disable	RW	aclstatus
Security Profile	Integer	1-32	RW	secprofile
RADIUS MAC Profile	Integer	User defined	RW	radmacprofile
RADIUS EAP Profile	Integer	User defined	RW	radeaprofile
RADIUS Accounting Profile	Integer	User defined	RW	radacctprofile

## Wireless Distribution System (WDS) Security Table Parameters

The WDS Security Table manages WDS related security objects.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
WDS Security Table	Table	N/A	R	wdssectbl
Table Index	Integer	Primary wireless interface = 3 Secondary wireless interface = 4	R	index
Security Mode	Integer	none, wep	RW	secmode
Encryption Key 0 <sup>1</sup>	User Defined	N/A	W	encryptkey0

**Note 1:** The appropriate key size must be configured. The access point supports 64, 128, and 152 bit encryption keys. The following table provides information on how to configure encryption keys using HEX or ASCII values.

Key Length	Configuration in Hex	Configuration in ASCII
64 bit encryption key	10 characters (0-F)	5 alphanumeric characters
128 bit encryption key	26 characters (0-F)	13 alphanumeric characters
152 bit encryption key	32 characters (0-F)	16 alphanumeric characters

## Ethernet Interface Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Ethernet Interface	Group	N/A	R	ethernet
Speed	Integer	10halfduplex 10fullduplex 10autoduplex 100halfduplex 100fullduplex autohalfduplex autoautoduplex (default)	RW	etherspeed
MAC Address	PhyAddress	N/A	R	ethermacaddr

## Management Parameters

### Secure Management Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Secure Management	Integer	enable/disable	RW	securemgmtstatus

### SNMP Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
SNMP	Group	N/A	R	snmp
SNMP Management Interface Bitmask	Interface Bitmask	0 or 2 = No interfaces (disable) 1 or 3 = Ethernet 4 or 6 = Wireless A 8 or 10 = Wireless B 12 = Wireless A & B 13 or 15 = All interfaces (default is 15)	RW	snmpifbitmask
Read Password	DisplayString	User Defined public (default) 6 - 32 characters	W	snmprpasswd
Read/Write Password	DisplayString	User Defined public (default) 6 - 32 characters	W	snmprwpasswd
SNMPv3 Authentication Password	DisplayString	User Defined public (default) 6 - 32 characters	W	snmpv3authpasswd
SNMPv3 Privacy Password	DisplayString	User Defined public (default) 6 - 32 characters	W	snmpv3privpasswd

**HTTP (web browser) Parameters**

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
HTTP	Group	N/A	R	http
HTTP Management Interface Bitmask	Interface Bitmask	0 or 2 = No interfaces (disable) 1 or 3 = Ethernet 4 or 6 = Wireless A 8 or 10 = Wireless B 12 = Wireless A & B 13 or 15 = All interfaces (default is 15)	RW	httpifbitmask
HTTP Password	DisplayString	User Defined 6 - 32 characters	W	httppasswd
HTTP Port	Integer	User Defined Default = 80	RW	httpport
Help Link	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	httphelpink
SSL Status	Integer	enable/disable	RW	sslstatus
SSL Certificate Passphrase	DisplayString	User Defined	W	sslpassphrase

**⇒ NOTE**

The default path for the Help files is **C:/Program Files/AirSPEED/AP542/HTML/home.htm**. (Use the forward slash character ("/") rather than the backslash character ("\") when configuring the **Help Link** location.)

**Telnet Parameters**

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Telnet	Group	N/A	R	telnet
Telnet Management Interface Bitmask	Interface Bitmask	0 or 2 = No interfaces (disable) 1 or 3 = Ethernet 4 or 6 = Wireless A 8 or 10 = Wireless B 12 = Wireless A & B 13 or 15 = all interfaces (default is 15)	RW	telifbitmask
Telnet Port	Integer	User Defined 23 (default)	RW	telport
Telnet Login Inactivity Time-out	Integer	30 – 300 seconds 60 sec (default)	RW	tellogintout
Telnet Session Idle Time-out	Integer	60 - 36000 seconds 900 sec (default)	RW	telsessionout

**Serial Port Parameters**

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Serial	Group	N/A	R	serial
Baud Rate	Integer	2400, 4800, 9600 (default), 19200, 38400, 57600	RW	serbaudrate
Data Bits	Integer	8	R	serdatabits
Parity	Integer	none	R	serparity
Stop Bits	Integer	1	R	serstopbits
Flow Control	Value	none (default) xonxoff	RW	serflowctrl

## RADIUS Based Management Access Parameters

The RADIUS Based Management Access parameters allow you to enable HTTP or Telnet Radius Management Access, enable or disable local user access, and configure the local user password.

The default local user ID is root and the default local user password is public. "Root" cannot be configured as a valid user for RADIUS based management access when local user access is enabled.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Radius Local User Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	radlocaluserstatus
Radius Local User Password	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	radlocaluserpasswd
HTTP Radius Management Access	Integer	enable disable	RW	httpradiusmgmtaccess
Telnet Radius Management Access	Integer	enable disable	RW	telradiusmgmtaccess

## SSH Parameters

The following commands enable or disable SSH and set the SSH host key.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
SSH Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	sshstatus
SSH Public Host Key Fingerprint	DisplayString	AP Generated	RW	sshkeyfprint
SSH Host Key Status	Integer	create delete	RW	sshkeystatus

The AP SSH feature, open-SSH, conforms to the SSH protocol, and supports SSH version 2.

The following SSH clients have been verified to interoperate with the AP's server. The following table lists the clients, version number, and the website of the client.

Clients	Version	Website
OpenSSH	V3.4-2	<a href="http://www.openssh.com">http://www.openssh.com</a>
Putty	Rel 0.53b	<a href="http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk">http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk</a>
Zoc	5.00	<a href="http://www.emtec.com">http://www.emtec.com</a>
Axessh	V2.5	<a href="http://www.labf.com">http://www.labf.com</a>

For key generation, only the OpenSSH client has been verified.

## Auto Configuration Parameters

These parameters relate to the Auto Configuration feature which allows an AP to be automatically configured by downloading a specific configuration file from a TFTP server during the boot up process.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Auto Configuration	Group	N/A	R	autoconfig
Auto Configuration Status	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	autoconfigstatus
Auto Config File Name	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	autoconfigfilename
Auto Config TFTP Server IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	autoconfigTFTPadddr

## TFTP Server Parameters

These parameters relate to upload and download commands.

When a user executes an upload and/or download Command, the specified arguments are stored in TFTP parameters for future use. If nothing is specified in the command line when issuing subsequent upload and/or download commands, the stored arguments are used.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
TFTP	Group	N/A	R	tftp
TFTP Server IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	tftpipaddr
TFTP File Name	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	tftpfilename
TFTP File Type	Integer	img config bootloader sslcertificate sslprivatekey sshprivatekey sshpublickey clibatchfile (CLI Batch File) cbflog (CLI Batch Error Log)	RW	tftpfiletype

## IP Access Table Parameters

When creating table entries, you may either specify the argument name followed by argument value or simply entering the argument value. When only the argument value is specified, then enter the values in the order depicted by the following table. CLI applies default values to the omitted arguments. Due to the nature of the information, the only argument that can be omitted is the “comment” argument.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
IP Access Table	Table	N/A	R	mgmtipaccesstbl
Table Index	Integer	User Defined	N/A	index
IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipaddr
IP Mask	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipmask
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	cmnt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (default) disable delete	RW	status

## Filtering Parameters

### Ethernet Protocol Filtering Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Ethernet Filtering	Group	N/A	R	etherflt
Filtering Interface Bitmask	Interface Bitmask	0 or 2 = No interfaces (disable) 1 or 3 = Ethernet 4 or 6 = Wireless A 8 or 10 = Wireless B 12 = Wireless A & B 13 or 15 = All interfaces (default is 15)	RW	etherfltbitmask
Operation Type		passthru block	RW	etherfltoptype

### Ethernet Filtering Table

Identify the different filters by using the table index.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Ethernet Filtering Table	Table	N/A	R	etherflttbl
Table Index	N/A	N/A	R	index
Protocol Number	Octet String	N/A	RW	protonumber
Protocol Name (optional)	DisplayString		RW	protoname
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (1) disable (2) delete (3)	RW	status

### ⇒ NOTE

The filter Operation Type (passthru or block) applies **only** to the protocol filters that are **enabled** in this table.

### Static MAC Address Filter Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Static MAC Address Filter Table	Table	N/A	R	staticmactbl
Table Index	N/A	N/A	R	index
Static MAC Address on Wired Network	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	wiredmacaddr
Static MAC Address Mask on Wired Network	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	wiredmask
Static MAC Address on Wireless Network	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	wirelessmacaddr
Static MAC Address Mask on Wireless Network	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	wirelessmask
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	max 255 characters	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (default) disable delete	RW	status

### Proxy ARP Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Proxy ARP	Group	N/A	R	parp
Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	parpstatus

### IP ARP Filtering Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
IP ARP Filtering	Group	N/A	R	iparp
Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	iparpfltstatus
IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	iparpfltaddr
Subnet Mask	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	iparpfltsubmask



## Broadcast Filtering Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Broadcast Filtering Table	Table	N/A	R	broadcastfittbl
Index	Integer	1-5	N/A	index
Protocol Name	DisplayString	N/A	R	protoname
Direction	Integer	ethertowireless wirelesstoether both (default)	RW	direction
Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	status

## TCP/UDP Port Filtering

The following parameters are used to enable/disable the Port filter feature.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Port Filtering	Group	N/A	R	portfit
Port Filter Status	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	portfitstatus

## TCP/UDP Port Filtering Table

The following parameters are used to configure TCP/UDP Port filters.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Port Filtering Table	Table	N/A	R	portfittbl
Table Index	N/A	User Defined (there are also 4 pre-defined indices, see <a href="#">Port Number</a> below for more information)	R	index
Port Type	Octet String	tcp udp tcp/udp	RW	porttype
Port Number	Octet String	User Defined (there are also 4 pre-defined protocols: Index 1: NetBios Name Service – 137, Index 2: NetBios Datagram Service – 138, Index 3: NetBios Session Service – 139, Index 4: SNMP Service – 161)	RW	portnum
Protocol Name	DisplayString	User Defined (there are also 4 pre-defined protocols, see <a href="#">Port Number</a> above)	RW	protoname
Interface Bitmask	Integer32	0 or 2 = No interfaces (disable) 1 or 3 = Ethernet 4 or 6 = Wireless A 8 or 10 = Wireless B 12 = Wireless A & B 13 or 15 = All interfaces (default is 15)	RW	ifbitmask
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (default for new entries) disable (default for pre-defined entries) delete	RW	status

## Alarms Parameters

### SNMP Table Host Table Parameters

When creating table entries, specify the argument name followed by argument value. CLI applies default values to the omitted arguments. Due to the nature of the information, the only argument that can be omitted is the “comment” argument.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
SNMP Trap Host Table	Table	N/A	R	snmptraphosttbl
Table Index	Integer	User Defined	N/A	index
IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipaddr
Password	DisplayString	User Defined (up to 64 characters)	W	passwd
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined (up to 254 characters)	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (default) disable delete	RW	status

### Syslog Parameters

The following parameters configure the Syslog settings.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Syslog	Group	N/A	R	syslog
Syslog Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	syslogstatus
Syslog Port	Octet String	514	R	syslogport
Syslog Lowest Priority Logged	Integer	1 – 7 1 = LOG_ALERT 2 = LOG_CRIT 3 = LOG_ERR 4 = LOG_WARNING 5 = LOG_NOTICE 6 = LOG_INFO (default) 7 = LOG_DEBUG	RW	syslogprilog
Heartbeat Status	Integer	enable (1) disable (2) (default)	RW	sysloghstatus
Heartbeat Interval (seconds)	Integer	1 – 604800 seconds; 900 sec. (default)	RW	sysloghinterval

#### NOTE

When Heartbeat is enabled, the AP periodically sends a message to the Syslog server to indicate that it is active. The frequency with which the heartbeat message is sent depends upon the setting of the Heartbeat Interval.

### Syslog Host Table

The table described below configures the Syslog hosts that will receive message from the AP. You can configure up to ten Syslog hosts.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Syslog Host Table	Table	N/A	R	sysloghosttbl
Table Index	Integer	1 – 10	N/A	index
IP Address	IpAddress	User Defined	RW	ipaddr
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable disable delete	RW	status

## Bridge Parameters

### Spanning Tree Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Spanning Tree	Group	N/A	R	stp
Spanning Tree Status	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	stpstatus
Bridge Priority	Integer	0 – 65535 32768 (default)	RW	stppriority
Maximum Age	Integer	600 – 4000 (in 0.01 sec intervals; i.e., 6 to 40 seconds) 2000 (default)	RW	stpmaxage
Hello Time	Integer	100 – 1000 (in 0.01 sec intervals; i.e., 1 to 10 seconds) 200 (default)	RW	stphellotime
Forward Delay	Integer	400 – 3000 (in 0.01 sec intervals; i.e., 4 to 30 seconds) 1500 (default)	RW	stpfwdelay

### Spanning Tree Priority and Path Cost Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Spanning Tree Table	Table	N/A	R	stpbl
Table Index (Port)	N/A	1 – 15	R	index
Priority	Integer	0 – 255 128 (default)	RW	priority
Path Cost	Integer	1 – 65535 100 (default)	RW	pathcost
State	Integer	disable blocking listening learning forwarding broken	R	state
Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	status

### Storm Threshold Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Storm Threshold	Group	N/A	N/A	stmthres
Broadcast Threshold	Integer	0 – 255 packets/sec (default is 0)	RW	stmbrdthres
Multicast Threshold	Integer	0 – 255 packets/sec (default is 0)	RW	stmmultithres

### Storm Threshold Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Storm Threshold Table	Table	N/A	R	stmthresbl
Table Index	Integer	1 = Ethernet 3 = Wireless	R	index
Broadcast Threshold	Integer	0 – 255 packets/sec (default is 0)	RW	bcast
Multicast Threshold	Integer	0 – 255 packets/sec (default is 0)	RW	mcast

## Intra BSS Subscriber Blocking

The following parameters control the Intra BSS traffic feature, which prevents wireless clients associated with the same AP from communicating with each other:

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Intra BSS Traffic	Group	N/A	R	intrabss
Intra BSS Traffic Operation	Integer	passthru (default) block	RW	intrabssoptype

## Packet Forwarding Parameters

The following parameters control the Packet Forwarding feature, which redirects wireless traffic to a specific MAC address:

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Packet Forwarding MAC Address	Group	N/A	R	pktfwd
Packet Forwarding MAC Address	MacAddress	User Defined	RW	pktfwdmacaddr
Packet Forwarding Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	pktfwdstatus
Packet Forwarding Interface Port	Integer	0 (any) (default) 1 (Ethernet) 2 (WDS 1) 3 (WDS 2) 4 (WDS 3) 5 (WDS 4) 6 (WDS 5) 7 (WDS 6)	RW	pktfwdif

## RADIUS Parameters

### General RADIUS Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
RADIUS	Group	N/A	R	radius
Client Invalid Server Address	Counter32	N/A	R	radcliinvsradd

### RADIUS Server Configuration Parameters



#### NOTE

Use a server name only if you have enabled the DNS Client functionality. See [DNS Client for RADIUS Name Resolution](#).

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
RADIUS Authentication	Table	N/A	R	radiustbl
Table Index (Profile Index)	Integer	N/A	R	index
Primary/Secondary Index	Integer	Primary (1) Secondary (2)	R	subindex
Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	status
Server Address Format	Integer	ipaddr Name	RW	seraddrfmt
Server IP Address or Name	IpAddress DisplayString	User defined (enter an IP address if seraddrfmt is ipaddr or a name if set to name; up to 254 characters if using a name)	RW	ipaddr
Port (optional)	Integer	User Defined 1812 (default)	RW	port

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Shared Secret	DisplayString	User Defined 6-32 characters	W	ssecret
Response Time (optional)	Integer	1 – 10 seconds 3 (default)	RW	responsetm
Maximum Retransmissions (optional)	Integer	0 – 4 3 (default)	RW	maxretx
RADIUS MAC Address Format	Integer	dashdelimited colondelimited singledashdelimited nodelimiter	RW	radmacaddrformat
RADIUS Accounting Inactivity Timer	Integer32	1-60 minutes	RW	radaccinactivetmr
Authorization Lifetime	Integer32	900-43200 seconds	W	radauthlifetm
RADIUS Accounting Update Interval	Integer32	10-3600 minutes	RW	radacctupinterval
VLAN ID	vlanID	-1 - 4094	RW	radvlanid

## Security Parameters

### MAC Access Control Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
MAC Address Control	Group	N/A	R	macacl
Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	aclstatus
Operation Type	Integer	passthru (default) block	RW	macacloptype

### MAC Access Control Table

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
MAC Address Control Table	Table	N/A	R	macactbl
Table Index	N/A	N/A	R	index
MAC Address	PhysAddress	User Defined	RW	macaddr
Comment (optional)	DisplayString	User Defined max 254 characters	RW	cmt
Status (optional)	Integer	enable (default) disable delete	RW	status

### Rogue Scan Configuration Table

The Rogue Scan Configuration Table allows you to enable or disable Rogue Scan and configure the scanning parameters.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Rogue Scan Configuration Table	Table	N/A	R	rscantbl
Rogue Scan Mode	Integer	Bkscan (1) Contscan (2)	RW	mode
Rogue Scan Cycle Time	Integer	1-1440	RW	cycletime
Rogue Scan Configuration Table Index	Integer	3 or 4	RW	index
Rogue Scan Status	Integer	enable disable	RW	status

## Hardware Configuration Reset

The Hardware Configuration Reset commands allows you to enable or disable the feature and to change the password to be used for configuration reset during boot up.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Hardware Configuration Reset Status	Integer	enable (1) disable (2)	R	hwconfigresetstatus
Configuration Reset Password	DisplayString	User Defined	RW	configresetpasswd

## VLAN/SSID Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
VLAN	Group	N/A	R	vlan
Status	Integer	enable disable (default)	RW	vlanstatus
Management ID	VlanId	-1 (untagged) or 1-4094	RW	vlanmgmtid

## Security Profile Table

The Security Profile Table allows you to configure security profiles. A maximum of 16 security profiles are supported per wireless interface.

Each security profile can be enabled and configured in one or more security modes (None Secure Station, WEP Station, 802.1x Station, WPA Station, WPA-PSK Station, 802.11i (WPA2), 802.11i-PSK (WPA2-PSK))The WEP/PSK parameters are separately configurable for each security mode. Refer to the command examples below for more information.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
Security Profile Table	Table	N/A	R	secprofiletbl
Table Index	Integer	1.1 to 32.5	R	index
Security Mode	Integer	nonsecsta wepsta 802.1xsta wpasta wpapsksta	R	secmode
Authentication Mode	Integer	none 802.1x psk	RW	authmode
Cipher	Integer	none wep tkip aes	R	ciphersuite
Encryption Key 0 <sup>1</sup>	Integer	User defined	W	encryptionkey0
Encryption Key 1 <sup>1</sup>	Integer	User defined	W	encryptionkey1
Encryption Key 2 <sup>1</sup>	Integer	User defined	W	encryptionkey2
Encryption Key 3 <sup>1</sup>	Integer	User defined	W	encryptionkey3
Encryption Transmit Key	Integer	0-3	RW	encryptkeytx
Encryption Key Length	Integer	64, 128, or 152	RW	encryptkeylength
WPA PSK Value	Octet String	Size 32	W	pskkey
WPA PSK Pass Phrase	Integer	8-63 characters	W	passphrase

**Note 1:** The appropriate key size must be configured. The access point supports 64, 128, and 152 bit encryption keys. The following table provides information on how to configure encryption keys using HEX or ASCII values.

Key Length	Configuration in Hex	Configuration in ASCII
64 bit encryption key	10 characters (0-F)	5 alphanumeric characters
128 bit encryption key	26 characters (0-F)	13 alphanumeric characters
152 bit encryption key	32 characters (0-F)	16 alphanumeric characters

## Command Syntax and Examples of Configuring Security Profiles:

### Configuring a Security Profile with Non Secure Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode nonsecure status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 2 secmode nonsecure status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with WEP Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode wep encryptkey0 <value> encryptkeylength <value>  
encryptkeytx <value> status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 3 secmode wep encryptkey0 12345 encryptkeylength 1  
encryptkeytx 0 status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with 802.1x Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode 802.1x rekeyint 900 status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 4 secmode 802.1x rekeyint 900 status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with WPA Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode wpa rekeyint 900 status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 5 secmode wpa rekeyint 900 status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with WPA-PSK Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode wpa-psk passphrase <value> status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 6 secmode wpa-psk passphrase 12345678 status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with 802.11i (WPA2) Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode 802.11i rekeyint <value> status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 7 secmode 802.11i rekeyint 900 status enable
```

### Configuring a Security Profile with 802.11i-PSK (WPA2 PSK) Security Mode

```
set secprofiletbl <index> secmode 802.11i-psk passphrase <value> status enable
```

Example:

```
[Device-Name]> set secprofiletbl 8 secmode 802.11i-psk passphrase 12345678 status  
enable
```

## Other Parameters

### IAPP Parameters

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
IAPP	Group	N/A	R	iapp
IAPP Status	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	iappstatus
Periodic Announce Interval (seconds)	Integer	80 120 (default) 160 200	RW	iappannint
Announce Response Time	Integer	2 seconds	R	iappannresp
Handover Time-out	Integer	410 ms 512 ms (default) 614 ms 717 ms 819 ms	RW	iapphandtout
Max. Handover Retransmissions	Integer	1 - 4 (default 4)	RW	iapphandretx
Send Announce Request on Startup	Integer	enable (default) disable	RW	iappannreqstart

#### NOTE

These parameters configure the Inter Access Point Protocol (IAPP) for roaming. Leave these settings at their default value unless a technical representative asks you to change them.

### Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM)/Quality of Service (QoS) parameters

The Wi-Fi Multimedia commands enable and configure WMM/QoS parameters per wireless interface. The following commands are part of the Wireless Interface Properties table.

#### Enabling QoS

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
QoS Status	Object Status	enable disable (default)	RW	qosstatus
QoS Maximum Medium Threshold	Integer	50 - 90	RW	qosmaximummediumthreshold



## Configuring QoS Policies

The QoS group manages the QoS policies:

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
QoS Group	Group	N/A	N/A	qos
QoS Policy Table	Table	N/A	N/A	qospolicytbl
Table Primary Index	Integer	N/A	R	index
Table Secondary Index	Integer	N/A	R	secindex
Policy Name	Display String	0 - 32 characters	RW	policyname
Policy Type	Integer	inlayer2, inlayer3, outlayer2, outlayer3, spectralink	RW	type
Priority Mapping Index	Integer	See Note.	RW	mapindex
Apply QoS Marking	Object Status	enable disable	RW	markstatus
Table Row Status	Row Status	enable disable delete	RW	status

### ⇒ NOTE

A priority mapping needs to be specified for a QoS Policy. The priority mapping depends on the type of policy configured. For Layer 2 policy types (inbound or outbound) a mapping index from the 802.1p to 802.1D table should be specified. For Layer 3 policy types (inbound or outbound) a mapping index from the IP DSCP to 802.1D table should be specified. The mapping index, in both cases, depends on the number of mappings configured by the user. For SpectraLink policy type a mapping is not required.

## Specifying the Mapping between 802.1p and 802.1D Priorities

The QoS 802.1p to 802.1D Mapping Table specifies the mapping between 802.1p and 802.1D priorities.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
QoS 802.1p to 802.1D Mapping Table	Table	N/A	N/A	qos1pto1dtbl
Table Index (Primary Index)	Integer	0 - 7	R	index
802.1D Priority (Secondary Index)	Integer	0 - 7	R	1dpriority
802.1p Priority	Integer	0 - 7	RW	1ppriority
Table Row Status	Row Status	enable disable delete	RW	status

## Specifying the Mapping between IP Precedence/DSCP Ranges and 802.1D Priorities

The QoS IP DSCP to 802.1D Mapping Table specifies the mapping between IP Precedence/DSCP Ranges and 802.1D priorities.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
QoS IP DSCP to 802.1D Mapping Table	Table	N/A	N/A	qosdscpto1dtbl
Table Index (Primary Index)	Integer	0 - 7	R	index
802.1D Priority	Integer	0 - 7	R	1dpriority
IP DSCP Lower Limit	Integer	0 - 62	RW	dscplower
IP DSCP Upper Limit	Integer	1 - 63	RW	dsc pupper
Table Row Status	Row Status	enable disable delete	RW	status

## QoS Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) Parameters

The following commands configure the client (STA) and AP Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters. You can modify the EDCA values for both Wireless A and Wireless B.

The EDCA parameter set provides information needed by the client stations for proper QoS operation during the wireless contention period. These parameters are used by the QoS-enabled AP to establish policy, to change policies when accepting new stations or new traffic, or to adapt to changes in the offered load. The EDCA parameters assign priorities to traffic types, such that higher priority packets gain access to the wireless medium more frequently than lower priority packets.

### ⇒ NOTE

We have defined default recommended values for EDCA parameters; we recommend not modifying EDCA parameters unless strictly necessary.

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
EDCA Table	Table	N/A	N/A	qosedcatbl
Table Index	Integer	1 - 4	R	index
CWmin	Integer	0 - 255	RW	cwmin
CWmax	Integer	0 - 65535	RW	cwmax
AIFSN	Integer	2 - 15	RW	aifsn
Tx OP Limit	Integer	0 - 65535	RW	txoplimit
MSDU Lifetime	Integer	0 - 500	RW	msdulifetime
AC Mandatory	Truth Value	true false	RW	acmandatory
QAP EDCA Table	Table	N/A	N/A	qosqapedcatbl
Table Index	Integer	1 - 4	R	index
CWmin	Integer	0 - 255	RW	cwmin
CWmax	Integer	0 - 65535	RW	cwmax
AIFSN	Integer	2 - 15	RW	aifsn
Tx OP Limit	Integer	0 - 65535	RW	txoplimit
MSDU Lifetime	Integer	0 - 500	RW	msdulifetime
AC Mandatory	Truth Value	true false	RW	acmandatory

## Defining the QoS Policy used for a Wireless Interface SSID

The QoS Policy object configures the QoS policy to be used per wireless interface SSID. This object is part of the Wireless Interface SSID Table; the CLI command for this table is "wifssidtbl".

Name	Type	Values	Access	CLI Parameter
QoS Policy	Integer	See Note.	RW	qospolicy

### ⇒ NOTE

A QoS Policy number needs to be specified in the SSID table. This depends on the QoS policies configured by the user. Once the user has configured QoS policies, the user should specify the policy to be used for that SSID.

## CLI Batch File

A CLI Batch file is a user-editable file that lists a series of CLI set commands, that can be uploaded to the Access Point to change its configuration. The Access Point executes the CLI commands specified in the CLI Batch file after upload and the configuration gets changed accordingly. A CLI Batch file can also be used for Auto Configuration.

The CLI Batch file does not replace the existing LTV format configuration file, which continues to define the configuration of the AP.

The CLI Batch file contains a list of CLI commands that the AP will execute. The AP performs the commands in the file immediately after the file is uploaded to the AP manually or during Auto Configuration. The AP parses the file and executes the CLI commands. Commands that do not require a reboot take effect immediately, while commands that require a reboot (typically commands affecting a wireless interface) will take effect after reboot.

## Auto Configuration and the CLI Batch File

The Auto Configuration feature allows download of the LTV format configuration file or the CLI Batch file. The AP detects whether the file uploaded is LTV format or a CLI Batch file. If the AP detects a CLI Batch file (a file with extension .cli), the AP executes the file immediately.

The AP will reboot after executing the CLI Batch file. Auto Configuration will not result in repeated reboots if the CLI Batch file contains rebootable parameters.

## CLI Batch File Format and Syntax

The CLI Batch file must be named with a .cli extension to be recognized by the AP. The maximum file size allowed is 100 Kbytes, and files with larger sizes cannot be uploaded to the AP. The CLI commands supported in the CLI Batch File are a subset of the legal AP CLI commands.

The follow commands are supported:

- Set commands
- Reboot command (the reboot command ignores the argument (time))

Each command must be separated by a new line.

### ⇒ NOTE

The following commands are not supported: Show command, Debug command, Undebug command, Upload command, Download command, Passwd command, Kill command, and the Exit, Quit, and Done commands.

## Sample CLI Batch File

The following is a sample CLI Batch File.

```
set sysname system1
set sysloc newyork
set sysctname contact1
set sysctphone 1234567890
set systemail email@domain.com
set ipaddr 11.0.0.66
set ipaddrtype static
set ipsubmask 255.255.255.0
set ipgw 11.0.0.1
set wif 4 autochannel disable
set wif 4 mode 1
set syslogstatus enable
set sysloghbstatus enable
set sysloghbinterval 5
set wif 4 netname london
reboot
```

Figure A-18 Sample CLI Batch File

## Reboot Behavior

When a CLI Batch file contains a reboot command, the reboot will occur only after the entire CLI Batch file has been executed.

There are two methods of uploading the CLI Batch File:

- Upload
- Upload and reboot (this option is to be used for a CLI Batch file containing the configuration parameters that require a reboot)

## CLI Batch File Error Log

If there is any error during the execution of the CLI Batch file, the AP will stop executing the file. The AP generates traps for all errors and each trap contains the following information:

- Start of execution
- Original filename of the uploaded file
- End of execution (along with the status of execution)
- Line number and description of failures that occurred during execution

The AP logs all the errors during execution and stores them in the Flash memory in a CLI Batch File Error Log named "CBFERR.LOG". The CLI Batch File Error Log can be downloaded through TFTP, HTTP, or CLI file transfer to a specified host.

# B

## ASCII Character Chart

You can configure WEP Encryption Keys in either Hexadecimal or ASCII format. Hexadecimal digits are 0-9 and A-F (not case sensitive). ASCII characters are 0-9, A-F, a-f (case sensitive), and punctuation marks. Each ASCII character corresponds to two hexadecimal digits.

The table below lists the ASCII characters that you can use to configure WEP Encryption Keys. It also lists the Hexadecimal equivalent for each ASCII character.

ASCII Character	Hex Equivalent	ASCII Character	Hex Equivalent	ASCII Character	Hex Equivalent	ASCII Character	Hex Equivalent
!	21	9	39	Q	51	i	69
"	22	:	3A	R	52	j	6A
#	23	;	3B	S	53	k	6B
\$	24	<	3C	T	54	l	6C
%	25	=	3D	U	55	m	6D
&	26	>	3E	V	56	n	6E
'	27	?	3F	W	57	o	6F
(	28	@	40	X	58	p	70
)	29	A	41	Y	59	q	71
*	2A	B	42	Z	5A	r	72
+	2B	C	43	[	5B	s	73
,	2C	D	44	\	5C	t	74
-	2D	E	45	]	5D	u	75
.	2E	F	46	^	5E	v	76
/	2F	G	47	_	5F	w	77
0	30	H	48	`	60	x	78
1	31	I	49	a	61	y	79
2	32	J	4A	b	62	z	7A
3	33	K	4B	c	63	{	7B
4	34	L	4C	d	64		7C
5	35	M	4D	e	65	}	7D
6	36	N	4E	f	66	~	7E
7	37	O	4F	g	67		
8	38	P	50	h	68		

## C

## Specifications

- [Software Features](#)
- [Hardware Specifications for the SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542](#)
- [Radio Specifications](#)

### Software Features

The tables below list the software features available on the AirSPEED AP542.

- [Number of Stations per BSS](#)
- [Management Functions](#)
- [Advanced Bridging Functions](#)
- [Medium Access Control \(MAC\) Functions](#)
- [Security Functions](#)
- [Network Functions](#)

#### Number of Stations per BSS

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
Without encryption	up to 64
With WEP encryption	up to 64
With 802.1x Authentication	up to 64
With WPA	up to 27

#### Management Functions

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
Web User Interface	yes
Telnet / CLI	yes
SNMP Agent	yes
Serial CLI	yes
Secure Management	yes
SSH	yes
RADIUS Based Management Access	yes

## Advanced Bridging Functions

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
IEEE 802.1d Bridging	yes
WDS Relay	yes
Roaming	yes
Protocol Filtering	yes
Multicast/Broadcast Storm Filtering	yes
Proxy ARP	yes
TCP/UDP Port Filtering	yes
Blocking Intra BSS Clients	yes
Packet Forwarding	yes

## Medium Access Control (MAC) Functions

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
Automatic Channel Selection (ACS)	yes
Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) <sup>1</sup>	yes
Closed System Feature	yes
Wireless Service Shutdown	yes
802.11d Support	yes
TX Power Control	yes
Wireless Multimedia Enhancements/Quality of Service (QoS)	yes

**Note 1:** DFS is required for 802.11a APs certified in the ETSI regulatory domain and operating in the middle frequency band. When ACS is disabled, available channels are limited to those in the lower frequency band. See [Dynamic Frequency Selection \(DFS\)](#) for more information.

## Security Functions

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
Security Profiles per VLAN	yes
RADIUS Profiles per VLAN	yes
IEEE 802.11 WEP <sup>1</sup>	yes
MAC Access Control	yes
RADIUS MAC-based Access Control	yes
IEEE 802.1x Authentication <sup>2</sup>	yes
Multiple Authentication Server Support per VLAN <sup>4</sup>	yes
Rogue Scanning to Detect Rogue Access Points and Clients	yes
Per User Per Session (PUPS) Encryption <sup>3</sup>	yes
Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)	yes
Hardware Configuration Reset Disable	yes

**Note 1:** Key lengths supported by 802.11a: 64-bit, 128-bit, and 152-bit.  
Key lengths supported by 802.11b: 64-bit and 128-bit.  
Key lengths supported by 802.11b/g: 64-bit, 128-bit, and 152-bit.

**Note 2:** EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, and PEAP client supplicant supported.

**Note 3:** Use in conjunction with WPA or 802.1x Authentication.

**Note 4:** Support is provided for a primary and backup RADIUS authentication server for both MAC-based authentication and 802.1x authentication.

## Network Functions

Feature	Supported by AirSPEED AP542
DHCP Client	yes
DHCP Server	yes
DHCP Relay Agent and IP Lease Time Renewal	yes
Inter Access Point Protocol (IAPP)	yes
Link Integrity	yes
System Logging (Syslog)	yes
RADIUS Accounting Support <sup>1</sup>	yes
DNS Client	yes
TCP/IP Protocol Support	yes
Virtual LAN Support	Each wireless interface can configure up to 16 SSIDs and VLANs per wireless interface, with specific security modes. For more information, refer to the Advanced Configuration chapter.

**Note 1:** Includes Fallback to Primary RADIUS Server, RADIUS Session Timeout, RADIUS Multiple MAC Address Formats, RADIUS DNS Host Name Support, RADIUS Start/Stop Accounting.

## Hardware Specifications for the SYSTIMAX AirSPEED AP542

### Physical Specifications

Dimensions (H x W x L) = 7.7 x 6.7 x 1.1 in (19.6 x 16.4 x 2.8 cm.)  
Weight = 0.8 lb (0.36 kg)

### Electrical Specifications

Voltage = 100 to 240 VAC (50-60 Hz)  
Current = 0.2 amp  
Power Consumption = <9 Watts (power supply)

### Environmental Specifications

Operating = 0°C to 55°C (32°F to 131°F) @ 5 to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing at 5°C and 55°C  
Storage = -20°C to 85°C (-4°F to 185°F) @ 5 to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing at 5°C and 85°C

### Ethernet Interface

10/100 Base-TX, RJ45 female socket

### Serial Port Interface

Standard RS-232C interface with DB-9, female connector

### Power over Ethernet Interface

Use a Category 5e or better (Cat 6) UTP cable.  
Standard 802.3af pin assignments

### HTTP Interface

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 with Service Pack 1 or later
- Netscape 7.1 or later



## Radio Specifications

- [802.11a Channel Frequencies](#)
- [802.11b/g Channel Frequencies](#)
- [Wireless Communication Range](#)



### **NOTE**

Refer to the Regulatory Flyer included with the AP for the latest regulatory information.

## 802.11a Channel Frequencies

The available 802.11a Channels varies by regulatory domain and/or country. 802.11a radio certification is available in the following regions:

- FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia
- ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, Iceland, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Switzerland
- TELEC: Japan
- SG: Singapore
- ASIA: China, Hong Kong, South Korea
- TW: Taiwan

There are five sets of frequency bands that determine the available channels depending on the regulatory domain. Some countries restrict 802.11a operation to specific frequency bands. The Web interface and CLI display the available channels for a radio's particular regulatory domain. In the CLI, any channels that are not available are labeled "Not Supported".

Frequency Band	Channel ID	FCC (GHz)	ETSI (GHz)	TELEC (GHz)	SG (GHz)	ASIA (GHz)	TW (GHz)
<b>Lower Band (36 = default)</b>	34	—	—	5.170 <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—
	36	5.180	5.180	—	5.180	—	—
	38	—	—	5.190	—	—	—
	40	5.200	5.200	—	5.200	—	—
	42	—	—	5.210	—	—	—
	44	5.220	5.220	—	5.220	—	—
	46	—	—	5.230	—	—	—
	48	5.240	5.240	—	5.240	—	—
<b>Middle Band (52 = default)</b>	52	5.260	5.260	—	—	—	5.260
	56	5.280	5.280	—	—	—	5.280
	58	5.300	5.300	—	—	—	5.300
	60	5.320	5.320	—	—	—	5.320
<b>H Band</b>	100	—	5.500	—	—	—	—
	104	—	5.520	—	—	—	—
	108	—	5.540	—	—	—	—
	112	—	5.560	—	—	—	—
	116	—	5.580	—	—	—	—
	120	—	5.600	—	—	—	—
	124	—	5.620	—	—	—	—
	128	—	5.640	—	—	—	—
	132	—	5.660	—	—	—	—
	136	—	5.680	—	—	—	—
140	—	5.700	—	—	—	—	
<b>Upper Band (149 = default)</b>	149	5.745	—	—	5.745	5.745	5.745
	153	5.675	—	—	5.675	5.675	5.675
	157	5.785	—	—	5.785	5.785	5.785
	161	5.805	—	—	5.805	5.805	5.805
<b>ISM Band</b>	165	5.825	—	—	5.825	—	5.825

**Note 1:** Channel 34 is the default channel for Japan.

## 802.11b/g Channel Frequencies

The available 802.11b/g channels vary by regulatory domain and/or country. 802.11b/g radio certification is available in the following regions:

- FCC: U.S., Canada, Mexico, Argentina, Australia
- ETSI: European Union (with the exception of Hungary and the Czech Republic), Brazil, China, Iceland, India, Hong Kong, Norway, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, South Korea, Switzerland, Taiwan, United Arab Emirates
- TELEC: Japan

Some countries restrict 802.11b/g operation to specific frequency bands. The web interface will always display the available channels depending on the embedded radio's domain. In the CLI, any channels that are not available are labeled "Not Supported".

Channel ID	FCC (GHz)	ETSI (GHz)	TELEC (GHz)
1	2.412	2.412	2.412
2	2.417	2.417	2.417
3	2.422	2.422	2.422
4	2.427	2.427	2.427
5	2.432	2.432	2.432
6	2.437	2.437	2.437
7	2.442	2.442	2.442
8	2.447	2.447	2.447
9	2.452	2.452	2.452
10	2.457	2.457 <sup>1</sup>	2.457
11	2.462	2.462 <sup>1</sup>	2.462
12	-	2.467 <sup>1</sup>	2.467
13	-	2.472 <sup>1</sup>	2.472
14	-	-	2.484 <sup>2</sup>

**Note 1:** France is restricted to these channels.

**Note 2:** Channel 14 is only available when using **802.11b only** mode.

## Wireless Communication Range

The range of the wireless signal is related to the composition of objects in the radio wave path and the transmit rate of the wireless communication. Communications at a lower transmit range may travel longer distances. The range values listed in the Communications Range Chart are typical distances as calculated by the SYSTIMAX development team for FCC-certified products. These values provide a rule of thumb and may vary according to the actual radio conditions at the location where the product is used.

The range of your wireless devices can be affected when the antennas are placed near metal surfaces and solid high-density materials. Range is also impacted due to "obstacles" in the signal path of the radio that may either absorb or reflect the radio signal.

In Open Office environments, antennas can "see" each other (no physical obstructions between them). In Semi-open Office environments, workspace is divided by shoulder-height, hollow wall elements; antennas are at desktop level. In a Closed Office environment, solid walls and other obstructions may affect signal strength.

The following tables show typical range values for various environments for FCC-certified products (range may differ for products certified in other regulatory domains).

**802.11b**

Range	11 Mbps/s	5.5 Mbps/s	2 Mbps/s	1 Mbps/s
Open Office	142 m (466 ft.)	177 m (581 ft.)	219 m (718 ft.)	272 m (892 ft.)
Semi-Open Office	98 m (322 ft.)	122 m (400 ft.)	151 m (495 ft.)	187 m (614 ft.)
Closed Office	67 m (220 ft.)	84 m (276 ft.)	104 m (341 ft.)	129 m (423 ft.)
Tx Power (dBm)	20	20	20	20
Receiver Sensitivity (dBm)	-82	-85	-88	-91
Antenna Gain	1 dBi (integrated diversity antenna module; 2.4-2.5 GHz)			

**Table C-1 802.11b Wireless Communication Ranges**

**802.11a**

Range	54 Mbps/s	48 Mbps/s	36 Mbps/s	24 Mbps/s	18 Mbps/s	12 Mbps/s	9 Mbps/s	6 Mbps/s
Open Office	46 m (151 ft.)	62 m (203 ft.)	82 m (269 ft.)	110 m (361 ft.)	136 m (446 ft.)	169 m (554 ft.)	181 m (594 ft.)	195 m (640 ft.)
Semi-Open Office	32 m (105 ft.)	42 m (138 ft.)	57 m (187 ft.)	75 m (246 ft.)	94 m (308 ft.)	116 m (381 ft.)	125 m (410 ft.)	134 m (440 ft.)
Closed Office	22 m (72 ft.)	29 m (95 ft.)	39 m (128 ft.)	52 m (171 ft.)	64 m (210 ft.)	80 m (262 ft.)	86 m (282 ft.)	92 m (302 ft.)
Tx Power (dBm)	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
Receiver Sensitivity (dBm)	-69	-73	-77	-81	-84	-87	-88	-89
Antenna Gain	0 dBi (integrated diversity antennas; 5.15-5.85 GHz)							

**Table C-2 802.11a Wireless Communication Ranges**

**802.11g**

Range	54 Mbps/s	48 Mbps/s	36 Mbps/s	24 Mbps/s	18 Mbps/s	12 Mbps/s	9 Mbps/s	6 Mbps/s	11 Mbps/s	5.5 Mbps/s	2 Mbps/s	1 Mbps/s
Open Office	56 m (184 ft.)	69 m (226 ft.)	107 m (351 ft.)	164 m (538 ft.)	219 m (718 ft.)	272 m (892 ft.)	292 m (958 ft.)	314 m (1030 ft.)	204 m (669 ft.)	236 m (774 ft.)	253 m (830 ft.)	338 m (1109 ft.)
Semi-Open Office	38 m (125 ft.)	48 m (157 ft.)	73 m (239 ft.)	113 m (371 ft.)	151 m (495 ft.)	187 m (614 ft.)	201 m (659 ft.)	216 m (709 ft.)	140 m (459 ft.)	162 m (531 ft.)	174 m (571 ft.)	232 m (761 ft.)
Closed Office	26 m (85 ft.)	33 m (108 ft.)	51 m (167 ft.)	78 m (256 ft.)	104 m (341 ft.)	129 m (423 ft.)	138 m (453 ft.)	149 m (489 ft.)	97 m (318 ft.)	111 m (364 ft.)	120 m (394 ft.)	160 m (525 ft.)
Tx Power (dBm)	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	20	20	20	20
Receiver Sensitivity (dBm)	-68	-70	-75	-80	-84	-87	-88	-89	-83	-85	-86	-90
Antenna Gain	1 dBi (integrated diversity antenna module; 2.4-2.5 GHz)											

**Table C-3 802.11g Wireless Communication Ranges**

# **SYSTIMAX<sup>®</sup>**

---

## SOLUTIONS

© 2005 CommScope, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

Vist our Web site at [www.systimax.com](http://www.systimax.com) or contact your local SYSTIMAX Solutions representative or SYSTIMAX Business Partner for more information.  
SYSTIMAX Solutions is a trademark of CommScope. All trademarks identified by ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of CommScope.

This document is for planning purposes only and is not intended to modify or supplement any specifications or warranties relating to SYSTIMAX Solutions products or services.

2/05 UG-AP542-1